

# OVID'S METAMORPHOSES

A Reader for Students in Elementary College Latin



CHRISTINE L. ALBRIGHT



# Ovid's *Metamorphoses*

*Ovid's Metamorphoses* is a Latin reader designed to partner existing elementary Latin textbooks.

The book features thirty compelling stories, graduated in difficulty and adapted from Ovid's epic *Metamorphoses* into prose. The original poem contains many different stories united thematically by the transformation which occurs in all of them; the epic features romance, seduction, humour, violence, monsters, and misbehaving gods.

Each chapter contains:

- a Latin passage adapted from the epic
- an accompanying vocabulary list
- a short commentary to help with translation
- a concise review of the specific grammar covered
- a brief comment on a literary aspect of the poem, or featured myth.

Suitable for college students studying Latin at the elementary level, *Ovid's Metamorphoses* is designed to be used alongside elementary Latin textbooks. Preserving Ovid's language and highly vivid descriptions, this reader introduces students to the epic masterpiece, allows them to consolidate their understanding of Latin prose, and offers opportunities for literary discussion.

**Christine L. Albright** is Assistant Professor and Elementary Languages Program Coordinator at the University of Georgia, USA.



# Taylor & Francis

Taylor & Francis Group

<http://taylorandfrancis.com>

# **Ovid's *Metamorphoses***

A Reader for Students in Elementary College Latin

**Christine L. Albright**

First published 2018  
by Routledge  
2 Park Square, Milton Park, Abingdon, Oxon OX14 4RN

and by Routledge  
711 Third Avenue, New York, NY 10017

*Routledge is an imprint of the Taylor & Francis Group, an informa business*

© 2018 Christine L. Albright

The right of Christine L. Albright to be identified as author of this work has been asserted by her in accordance with sections 77 and 78 of the Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988.

All rights reserved. No part of this book may be reprinted or reproduced or utilised in any form or by any electronic, mechanical, or other means, now known or hereafter invented, including photocopying and recording, or in any information storage or retrieval system, without permission in writing from the publishers.

*Trademark notice:* Product or corporate names may be trademarks or registered trademarks, and are used only for identification and explanation without intent to infringe.

*British Library Cataloguing in Publication Data*

A catalogue record for this book is available from the British Library

*Library of Congress Cataloging in Publication Data*

Names: Ovid, 43 B.C.-17 A.D. or 18 A.D., author. | Albright, Christine L., editor.  
Title: Ovid's Metamorphoses: a reader for students in elementary college Latin/  
Christine L. Albright.

Description: Abingdon, Oxon: Routledge, 2017. | Includes bibliographical references and index.

Identifiers: LCCN 2017012612 | ISBN 9781138291171 (hardback: alk. paper) | ISBN 9781138291188 (pbk.: alk. paper) | ISBN 9781315265605 (ebook)

Subjects: LCSH: Latin language--Readers.

Classification: LCC PA6519.M5 A537 2017 | DDC 873/.01--dc23

LC record available at <https://lcn.loc.gov/2017012612>

ISBN: 978-1-138-29117-1 (hbk)

ISBN: 978-1-138-29118-8 (pbk)

ISBN: 978-1-315-26560-5 (ebk)

Typeset in Times New Roman  
by Sunrise Setting Ltd., Brixham, UK

**FILIO CARISSIMO**



# Taylor & Francis

Taylor & Francis Group

<http://taylorandfrancis.com>

# Contents

<i>Acknowledgements</i>	xi
<i>Abbreviations</i>	xii
<i>Introduction</i>	xiii
<b>1 Creation begins: (<i>Met.</i> 1.5–150)</b>	2
<i>Noun and verb basics</i>	4
<b>2 Creation continues: (<i>Met.</i> 1.5–150)</b>	6
<i>Second declension</i>	8
<b>3 Lycaon: (<i>Met.</i> 1.163–252)</b>	10
<i>Second conjugation present indicative active</i>	14
<b>4 Deucalion and Pyrrha: (<i>Met.</i> 1.313–415)</b>	16
<i>Third declension</i>	20
<b>5 Apollo and Python: (<i>Met.</i> 1.416–451)</b>	22
<i>Third conjugation</i>	24
<b>6 Apollo and Daphne: (<i>Met.</i> 1.452–567)</b>	26
<i>Imperfect indicative active</i>	30
<b>7 Phaethon: (<i>Met.</i> 2.1–400)</b>	32
<i>Future indicative active</i>	36
<b>8 Cadmus and the founding of Thebes: (<i>Met.</i> 3.1–137)</b>	38
<i>Third declension adjectives</i>	42

<b>9 Actaeon: (<i>Met.</i> 3.138–252)</b>	44
<i>Fourth declension</i>	48
<b>10 Semele: (<i>Met.</i> 3.253–315)</b>	50
<i>Fourth conjugation</i>	54
<b>11 Tiresias: (<i>Met.</i> 3.316–38)</b>	56
<i>Demonstratives</i>	58
<b>12 Bacchus and Pentheus: (<i>Met.</i> 3.511–733)</b>	60
<i>Perfect indicative active</i>	64
<b>13 Mars and Venus: (<i>Met.</i> 4.167–89)</b>	66
<i>Pluperfect indicative active</i>	70
<i>Future perfect indicative active</i>	70
<b>14 Salmacis and Hermaphroditus: (<i>Met.</i> 4.274–388)</b>	72
<i>Fifth declension</i>	76
<b>15 The transformation of Cadmus: (<i>Met.</i> 4.563–603)</b>	78
<i>Relative clauses</i>	82
<b>16 Perseus and Atlas: (<i>Met.</i> 4.604–62)</b>	84
<i>Passive verb forms</i>	88
<b>17 Perseus and Andromeda: (<i>Met.</i> 4.663–803)</b>	90
<i>Infinitives</i>	94
<i>Indirect statement</i>	94
<b>18 The rape of Proserpina: (<i>Met.</i> 5.346–571)</b>	96
<i>Participles</i>	100

<b>19 Arachne and Minerva: (Met. 6.1–145)</b>	102
<i>Ablative absolute</i>	106
<b>20 Niobe: (Met. 6.146–312)</b>	108
<i>Present subjunctive</i>	112
<i>Jussive subjunctive</i>	112
<b>21 Tereus, Procne, and Philomela: (Met. 6.401–674)</b>	114
<i>Imperfect subjunctive</i>	118
<i>Fear clauses</i>	118
<b>22 Boreas and Orithyia: (Met. 6.675–721)</b>	120
<i>Deponent verbs</i>	124
<i>Participles of deponent verbs</i>	124
<b>23 Medea's rejuvenation of Aeson: (Met. 7.159–293)</b>	126
<i>Purpose clauses</i>	130
<b>24 Medea's punishment of Pelias: (Met. 7.294–349)</b>	132
<i>Perfect subjunctive</i>	136
<i>Result clauses</i>	136
<b>25 Scylla and Nisus: (Met. 8.1–151)</b>	138
<i>Jussive noun clauses</i>	142
<b>26 Pomona and Vertumnus: (Met. 14.623–771)</b>	144
<i>Pluperfect subjunctive</i>	148
<i>Conditions</i>	148
<b>27 Quirinus: (Met. 14.805–51)</b>	150
<i>Cum clauses</i>	154

<b>28 Cipus: (<i>Met.</i> 15.547–621)</b>	156
<i>Relative clauses of characteristic</i>	160
<b>29 Aesculapius: (<i>Met.</i> 15.622–744)</b>	162
<i>Indirect question</i>	166
<b>30 The apotheosis of Caesar: (<i>Met.</i> 15.745–870)</b>	168
<i>Gerunds and gerundives</i>	172
<i>Glossary</i>	174
<i>Index</i>	208

# Acknowledgements

Many people have assisted with the production of this reader, and I am indebted to each one of them. I thank my colleagues in the Department of Classics at the University of Georgia, including especially Thomas Biggs, Keith Dix, Erika Hermanowicz, Naomi Norman, and Peter O'Connell. John Nicholson and Charles Platter read drafts of stories and offered excellent suggestions and very helpful advice. I am grateful to both of them for their input. I also owe much to my anonymous reviewers, whose comments resulted in a very-much-improved reader. Any mistakes which remain are of course my own. I should thank several graduate research assistants who have helped with the project, including Silvio Curtis, Alex Karsten, and Aaron Ivey. Kelly Dugan, with her endless energy and meticulous organizational and editing skills, made enormous contributions to the project in its final stages. Carrie Cabe and Lori Gibbons of the University of Georgia's Information Technology team helped with many technical matters. I would like to thank my parents, George and Carol Albright, for their support and for the many hours they have spent entertaining my young son so I could work. Finally, I would like to thank the students in my elementary Latin classes at the University of Georgia, for whom I undertook this project in the first place.

# Abbreviations

abl.	ablative
acc.	accusative
adj.	adjective
adv.	adverb
conj.	conjunction
dat.	dative
defect.	defective
demonst.	demonstrative
f.	feminine
gen.	genitive
impers.	impersonal
indecl.	indeclinable
inf.	infinitive
interj.	interjection
interrog.	interrogative
m.	masculine
<i>Met.</i>	<i>Metamorphoses</i>
n.	neuter
nom.	nominative
numer.	numeral/numerical
pl.	plural
poss.	possessive
prep.	preposition
pron.	pronoun
reflex.	reflexive
rel.	relative
sing.	singular

# Introduction

Publius Ovidius Naso, commonly known as Ovid, was born on March 20, 43 BCE at Sulmo, a town located about 100 miles east of Rome. He was born to a family of equestrian rank, and he received an excellent education which was meant to prepare him for a legal career. Although he did hold some minor public offices, Ovid instead felt compelled to write poetry. In *Tristia* 4.10.17–26, Ovid recalls his early devotion to poetry:

frater ad eloquium viridi tendebat ab aevo,  
fortia verbosi natus ad arma fori;  
at mihi iam puero caelestia sacra placebant,  
inque suum furtim Musa trahebat opus.  
saepe pater dixit “studium quid inutile temptas?  
Maeonides nullas ipse reliquit opes.”  
motus eram dictis, totoque Helicone relicto  
scribere temptabam verba soluta modis.  
sponte sua carmen numeros veniebat ad aptos,  
et quod temptabam scribere versus erat.

My brother tended towards oratory from a young age; he was born for the strong weapons of the wordy forum. But for me already as a boy heavenly worship was pleasing, and the Muse stealthily was drawing me into her work. Often my father said: “Why do you attempt a useless pursuit? Homer himself left no wealth.” I was moved by his words, and, with Helicon altogether left behind, I tried to write words freed from meter. Of its own accord, song came to fitting numbers, and whatever I tried to write was verse.

Ovid enjoyed poetic success as a young man and eventually published many works in elegiac meter, including *Amores* (love poems), *Heroides* (letters from heroines to heroes), *Medicamina Faciei Femineae* (a poem about cosmetics), *Ars Amatoria* (a didactic poem about erotic pursuits), *Remedia Amoris* (a poem about how to disentangle oneself from relationships), *Fasti* (a poem about the Roman calendar), *Tristia* (poems written from exile), *Epistulae ex Ponto* (letters written from exile), and *Ibis* (a curse-poem).

In 8 CE, at the height of his career, Ovid was exiled to Tomis on the Black Sea by the emperor Augustus. His sentence was *relegatio*, which meant that he was banished from Rome but allowed to keep his property and citizenship. The exact cause for the punishment is not known, although in his later poetry Ovid himself tells his audience that his banishment was due to a *carmen* (poem) and an *error* (mistake). It is generally assumed that the *carmen* was the *Ars Amatoria*, although it had been published almost a decade before Ovid’s relegation.

The *Metamorphoses*, which was almost finished in the year Ovid's sentence was passed down, seems just as likely to have offended Augustus.

The *Metamorphoses* is Ovid's only surviving work in dactylic hexameter, the meter of Greek and Roman epic. It is organized in 15 books, and it contains a multitude of mythological stories from various cultures. The poem begins with a description of the creation of the universe and ends with a celebration of the political order of Rome under Augustus, so in general there is some sense of linear progression through the course of the text. The structure is quite complicated, however. Ovid embeds stories within other stories, allows stories to bleed from one book into the next, and uses multiple internal narrators. Transformation serves as a unifying theme, and Ovid's characters change into animals, birds, watery springs, constellations, and plants, for example.

This reader offers 30 stories which have been adapted from Ovid's verse into Latin prose. The reader is intended to complement elementary Latin textbooks and aims to help bridge the often wide gap between the elementary and intermediate reading levels by providing compelling, challenging passages. The reader has been designed as a supplementary text; ideally, students will attempt these stories after translating simpler passages in a primary textbook. The stories are graduated in difficulty and introduce grammatical topics typically covered during the first year of studying college Latin. In general, the length of the stories increases as the reader progresses, although a few shorter examples are found in the middle chapters which reflect the concise nature of Ovid's own narratives. As they work their way through the reader, students will encounter elements of Latin which tend to be difficult to negotiate when they first begin to read actual texts, such as relative pronouns which begin sentences, epithets, and plural words used when singular words are expected. The stories feature much of Ovid's own vocabulary and syntax.

The reader also aims to introduce students to Ovid's epic masterpiece. Thus, Ovid's poetic language and highly vivid descriptions have been preserved wherever possible. His graphic presentation of the mythical material has been retained. Sexual situations and raw violence are pervasive in the epic, and the content of Ovid's stories has not been sanitized. Most of the stories in the reader appear in the first half of the epic, but the last five stories are taken from Books 14 and 15. Like the epic itself, the reader begins with the story of creation and ends with the story of the apotheosis of Julius Caesar. Thus, if read from beginning to end, the reader will provide a sense of the structure and linear progression of the *Metamorphoses* and offer opportunities for robust literary discussion.

Each chapter includes a Latin passage adapted from the epic, an accompanying vocabulary list, a short commentary to help with translation, a concise review of the specific grammar covered, and a comment about a literary aspect of the poem or the featured myth. Students should note that vocabulary words are glossed the first time they appear but are not glossed in subsequent chapters. Some commonly used words such as *nōn* and *sed* appear only in the final glossary. Participles are glossed as adjectives until Chapter 18, when participles are introduced. After Chapter 18, vocabulary lists include the verbs from which participles are derived. Comparative and superlative adjectives and adverbs appear in vocabulary lists and the final glossary in their comparative or superlative forms.



# Taylor & Francis

Taylor & Francis Group

<http://taylorandfrancis.com>

# 1 Creation begins

(*Met.* 1.5–150)

*At the beginning of Book 1, Ovid offers an account of creation. He calls this primordial state “Chaos,” borrowing the term from the Greek poet Hesiod.*

- 1 Ante terrās et aquās, nātūra est ūna sphaera. Sphaera nōn ordināta est. Massa
- 2 indigesta est. Nōn sunt stellae. Nōn est lūna. Terra, aqua, et aura sunt, sed terrae,
- 3 aquae, et aerae sine formā sunt. Nōn sunt silvae. Nōn sunt āreae. Nōn sunt bestiae.
- 4 Nōn sunt casae. Nōn sunt undae. Nōn rīpae sunt. Nōn piscīnae sunt. Nōn nāviculae
- 5 sunt. Nōn Eurus, Zephyrus, Boreās vel Auster. Nōn sunt muscae. Chaos est. Nihil
- 6 suam formam servat. Aliud aliīs obstat. Tum aliquis inordinātam mātēriam ordinat.

## Commentary

**4 *Nōn sunt undae. Nōn rīpae sunt:*** Notice that the subject of the sentence can appear in various positions with respect to the verb. That they are in the nominative case indicates that *undae* and *rīpae* are the subjects of these sentences.

**5 *Nōn Eurus, Zephyrus, Boreās vel Auster:*** The names of the winds are all in the nominative case.

**5–6 *Nihil suam formam servat:*** The Latin word *suus, a, um* is a reflexive adjective, which means that it reflects back to the subject of the sentence and takes its meaning from that. Thus, it can mean *his own, her own, its own, or their own*. Like any adjective, it agrees with the noun it modifies in case, number, and gender, but you must determine what the subject is to translate it correctly. Here, the subject is *nihil*, so it should be translated *its own*.

**aliquis, aliquid:** someone, something  
**aliud . . . aliis:** one thing (nom.) . . . the others (dat.)  
**ante:** (adv. and prep. + acc.) before  
**aqua, ae f.:** water  
**ārea, ae f.:** open space, plain, threshing floor  
**aura, ae f.:** air, breeze, wind  
**Auster, Austrī m.:** Auster, the south wind  
**bestia, ae f.:** beast, animal  
**Boreās, ae m.:** Boreas, the north wind  
**casa, ae f.:** cottage, cabin, house  
**Chaos n.:** Chaos, boundless empty space  
**Eurus, ī m.:** Eurus, the east wind  
**forma, ae f.:** form, shape  
**indigestus, a, um:** confused, unarranged  
**inordinātus, a, um:** disordered, confused  
**lūna, ae f.:** the moon  
**massa, ae f.:** a mass, lump  
**māteria, ae f.:** matter, material  
**musca, ae f.:** a fly  
**nātūra, ae f.:** nature  
**nāvicula, ae f.:** little ship, boat

**nihil n.:** (indecl.) nothing  
**obstō, obstāre, obstī, obstātum:** to stand against, oppose (+ dat.)  
**ordinātus, a, um:** ordered, organized  
**ordinō, ordināre, ordināvī, ordinātum:** to put in order, arrange  
**piscīna, ae f.:** a fishpond, reservoir  
**rīpa, ae f.:** river bank, shore  
**servō, servāre, servāvī, servātum:** to keep, save, preserve  
**silva, ae f.:** wood, forest  
**sine:** (prep. + abl.) without  
**sphaera, ae f.:** globe, sphere  
**stella, ae f.:** star  
**sum, esse, fuī, futūrum:** to be  
**suus, a, um:** (reflex. poss. adj.) his, her, its own  
**terra, ae f.:** land  
**tum:** (adv.) then, at that time  
**unda, ae f.:** water, wave  
**ūnus, a, um:** one, single  
**vel:** (conj.) or  
**Zephyrus, ī m.:** Zephyr, the west wind

## NOUN AND VERB BASICS

### First declension

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<i>Nominative</i>	terra	terrae
<i>Genitive</i>	terrae	terrārum
<i>Dative</i>	terrae	terrīs
<i>Accusative</i>	terram	terrās
<i>Ablative</i>	terrā	terrīs

### First conjugation present indicative active

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<i>1st Person</i>	obstō	obstāmus
<i>2nd Person</i>	obstās	obstātis
<i>3rd Person</i>	obstat	obstant

### Present indicative of *esse*

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<i>1st Person</i>	sum	sumus
<i>2nd Person</i>	es	estis
<i>3rd Person</i>	est	sunt

Ovid introduces his epic with a short statement about his poetic agenda. He says: “My mind compels me to tell of forms changed into new bodies. Gods (for you all also have changed those forms), breathe favorably upon my beginnings and draw out an everlasting song which runs from the first origin of the universe to my own time.” The opening statement thus highlights the theme of the epic: transformation. Change occurs within each story included in the poem, and the opening account of creation, in which an ordered universe develops from a state of chaos, certainly is in keeping with Ovid’s stated theme. If read from beginning to end, the entire epic may be interpreted as a political cosmogony which celebrates the grand political metamorphosis of Rome under Augustus.



# Taylor & Francis

Taylor & Francis Group

<http://taylorandfrancis.com>

## 2 Creation continues

(*Met.* 1.5–150)

*Ovid continues his account of creation by describing how one god brings order to the universe by arranging things in their proper place. Various living things occupy their respective habitats, and man is born.*

- 1 Subitō deus mundum fabricat. Quid fabricat? Sunt terrae. Sunt tumulī et campī.  
2 Sunt silvae. Est herba. Cicādae et muscae sunt. Arāneae sunt. Cervae, ursae,  
3 cunīculī sunt. Caprae sunt. Aquae sunt. Pontus est. Rīpae et stāgna sunt. Pluvia est.  
4 Sunt conchae et delphīnī. Cocleae, salamandrae, et anguillae sunt. Caelum est.  
5 Sunt stellae. Est lūna. Virgō, Capricornus, Aquārius, Piscēs, Leō, Ariēs, Geminī,  
6 Taurus, Libra, Sagittārius, Cancer, et Scorpiō sunt. Est orbis lacteus. Ventī et aurae  
7 sunt. Eurus, Zephyrus, Boreās, et Auster sunt. Hūmānī autem nōn sunt. Tum virī  
8 sunt—sīve deus sīve terra virōs creat.
- 9 Sunt quattuor aeva mundī. Prīmum aevum aureum est. Terra ipsa multa sine rastrō  
10 dat. Nōn est tuba. Nōn galeae, nōn gladiī. Flāvum mel stillat. Tum aevum argenteum  
11 est. In aevō argenteō prīmum virī casās optant. Cultūra terrae est. Tertium aevum  
12 aēneum est. Multa arma sunt, sed aevum tamen nōn est scelerātum. Ultimum  
13 aevum dē dūrō ferrō est. Virī vēla ventīs dant, et ad terrās novās nāvīgant. Bella  
14 sanguinea sunt. Virī dīs nōn sacrificant. Iuppiter nōn beātus est.

### Commentary

**5–6 *Virgō, Capricornus, Aquārius, Piscēs, Leō, Ariēs, Geminī, Taurus, Libra, Sagittārius, Cancer, et Scorpiō sunt*:** You will no doubt recognize these signs of the zodiac. In Latin, the names mean *The Virgin, The Goat, The Water Carrier, The Fish, The Lion, The Ram, The Twins, The Bull, The Scales, The Archer, The Crab, and The Scorpion*. You will see these signs again in the story of Phaethon, where they are represented both on a work of art and as giant forms in the sky.

**9–10 *Terra ipsa multa sine rastrō dat*:** The word *ipse, ipsa, ipsum* is an intensive pronoun or adjective which is used to add emphasis or to focus attention on a word, so its meaning depends on what it is intensifying. Here, it agrees with *terra*, so it should be translated *itself*. Ovid means here that the land produces food easily without agriculture.

**10 *Flāvum mel stillat*:** *mel, mellis n.* is a noun of the third declension and is in the nominative.

**14 *Virī dīs nōn sacrificant*:** *dīs* is dative plural of *deus*.

<b>ad:</b> (prep. + acc.) to, towards	<b>ipse, ipsa, ipsum:</b> himself, herself, itself
<b>aëneus, a, um:</b> bronze	<b>Iuppiter, Iovis m.:</b> Jupiter/Jove,
<b>aevum, ī n.:</b> age, period of time	ruler of the gods
<b>anguilla, ae f.:</b> eel	<b>mel, mellis n.:</b> honey
<b>arānea, ae f.:</b> spider, web	<b>multus, a, um:</b> many
<b>argenteus, a, um:</b> of silver	<b>mundus, ī m.:</b> world, universe
<b>arma, ōrum n. pl.:</b> arms, weapons	<b>nāvigō, nāvigāre, nāvigāvī, nāvigātum:</b>
<b>aureus, a, um:</b> golden	to sail
<b>autem:</b> (conj.) but, however	<b>novus, a, um:</b> new, young
<b>beātus, a, um:</b> happy	<b>optō, optāre, optāvī, optātum:</b> to desire,
<b>bellum, ī n.:</b> war	wish for
<b>caelum, ī n.:</b> heaven, sky	<b>orbis lacteus:</b> Milky Way
<b>campus, ī m.:</b> field	<b>pluvia, ae f.:</b> rain
<b>capra, ae f.:</b> goat	<b>pontus, ī m.:</b> sea, ocean
<b>cerva, ae f.:</b> deer	<b>prīmum:</b> (adv.) at first, first
<b>cicāda, ae f.:</b> cicada	<b>quattuor:</b> (indecl. numer. adj.) four
<b>coclea, ae f.:</b> snail	<b>quis, quid:</b> (interrog. pron.) who, what
<b>concha, ae f.:</b> sea-shell, shell-fish	<b>rastrum, ī n.:</b> rake, hoe
<b>creō, creāre, creāvī, creātum:</b> to create,	<b>sacrificō, sacrificāre, sacrificāvī,</b>
make	<b>sacrificātum:</b> to offer sacrifice
<b>cultūra, ae f.:</b> cultivation, tilling	<b>salamandra, ae f.:</b> salamander
<b>cunīculus, ī m.:</b> rabbit	<b>sanguineus, a, um:</b> bloody
<b>dē:</b> (prep. + abl.) from, down from, about	<b>scelerātus, a, um:</b> wicked, profane
<b>delphīnus, ī m.:</b> dolphin	<b>sīve/seu ... sīve/seu:</b> (conj.) whether ... or
<b>deus, ī m.:</b> a god	<b>stāgnum, ī n.:</b> standing water, pond
<b>dō, dare, dedī, datum:</b> to give	<b>stillō, stillāre, stillāvī, stillātum:</b> to drip
<b>dūrus, a, um:</b> hard	<b>subitō:</b> (adv.) suddenly
<b>fabricō, fabricāre, fabricāvī, fabricātum:</b> to	<b>tamen:</b> (conj.) however, nevertheless
make, construct	<b>tertius, a, um:</b> third
<b>ferrum, ī n.:</b> iron	<b>tuba, ae f.:</b> military horn
<b>flāvus, a, um:</b> blonde, yellow	<b>tumulus, ī m.:</b> hill, burial mound
<b>galea, ae f.:</b> helmet	<b>ultimus, a, um:</b> last, final
<b>gladius, ī m.:</b> sword	<b>ursa, ae f.:</b> bear
<b>herba, ae f.:</b> herb, grass	<b>vēlum, ī n.:</b> sail, covering
<b>hūmānus, a, um:</b> human	<b>ventus, ī m.:</b> wind
<b>in:</b> (prep. + abl.) in, on; (prep. + acc.) into	<b>vir, virī m.:</b> a man

**SECOND DECLENSION****Masculine**

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<i>Nominative</i>	ventus	ventī
<i>Genitive</i>	ventī	ventōrum
<i>Dative</i>	ventō	ventīs
<i>Accusative</i>	ventum	ventōs
<i>Ablative</i>	ventō	ventīs

**Neuter**

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<i>Nominative</i>	caelum	caela
<i>Genitive</i>	caelī	caelōrum
<i>Dative</i>	caelō	caelis
<i>Accusative</i>	caelum	caela
<i>Ablative</i>	caelō	caelis

Ovid presents the creation of the universe in terms of an artist fashioning a work of art, although he is vague about which god serves as the cosmic fabricator. An obvious choice would be Vulcan, who is a craftsman-god. Art and artists figure prominently throughout Ovid's *Metamorphoses*. In fact, some scholars believe that, by focusing on the fates of so many mythological artists in the poem (many of whom suffer unpleasant outcomes), Ovid is making a statement about the role of artists in Augustan Age Rome.



# Taylor & Francis

Taylor & Francis Group

<http://taylorandfrancis.com>

### 3 Lycaon

(*Met.* 1.163–252)

*At a meeting of the gods, Jupiter tells the story of how he punished impious Lycaon, king of Arcadia.*

- 1 Iuppiter, plēnus īrae, concilium deōrum vocat. Deī et deae ad magna tecta et
- 2 rēgiam Iovis volant, et in sellīs marmoreīs sedent. Iuppiter fābulam dīs narrat:
- 3 “Infāmia mē movet, et dē summō Olympō volō. Deus sub simulācrō hūmānō terrās
- 4 lustrō. Ad tecta inhospita tyrannī Arcadiī appropinquō, cum crepusculum tenebrās
- 5 portat. Signa deī dō, et vulgus mihi supplicat. Lycāōn, tyrannus Arcadius, pia vōta
- 6 inrīdet. Avet vērū: estne advena deus vel vir? Lycāōn experientiam excōgitat.
- 7 Lycāōn iugulum victimae hūmānae secāt, et carnōsa in flammā torret. Tum,
- 8 tyrannus carnōsa quasi cēnam mihi dat. Iniūria īram meam auget. Animus meus mē

#### Commentary

**3 *Infāmia mē movet, et dē summō Olympō volō*:** The story Jupiter is telling has already happened, but he is using the present tense to make the story especially vivid for his audience.

**3–4 *Deus sub simulācrō hūmānō terrās lustrō*:** *Deus* agrees with the subject of *lustrō*, which is first person singular. Translate: *I, a god, traverse the lands under a human image.*

**4 *Ad tecta inhospita*:** Latin often uses a plural noun when a singular idea is intended.

**advena, ae m. or f.:** stranger  
**animus, ī m.:** spirit, mind  
**appropinquō, appropinquāre, appropinquāvī, appropinquātum:** to approach  
**Arcadius, a, um:** of Arcadia, a region in central Greece  
**augeō, augēre, auxī, auctum:** to make grow  
**aveō, avēre:** to desire, long for  
**carnōsus, a, um:** fleshy, meaty  
**cēna, ae f.:** dinner  
**concilium, ī n.:** meeting, assembly, council  
**crepusculum, ī n.:** the twilight  
**cum:** (conj.) when, since, although, (prep. + abl.) with  
**dea, ae f.:** a goddess  
**excōgitō, excōgitāre, excōgitāvī, excōgitātum:** to devise, invent  
**experientia, ae f.:** trial, testing  
**fābula, ae f.:** story, tale  
**flamma, ae f.:** flame, fire  
**infāmia, ae f.:** negative report, dishonor  
**inhospitus, a, um:** inhospitable, uninviting  
**iniūria, ae f.:** injury, harm  
**inrīdeō, inrīdēre, inrīsī, inrīsum:** to mock, jeer at  
**īra, ae f.:** anger, rage  
**iugulum, ī n.:** throat  
**lustrō, lustrāre, lustrāvī, lustrātum:** to go place to place, traverse, purify  
**Lycāōn Lycāonis m.:** Lycaon, mythical ruler of Arcadia  
**magnus, a, um:** big, great  
**marmoreus, a, um:** of marble  
**meus, a, um:** (poss. adj.) my, mine

**moveō, movēre, mōvī, mōtum:** to move, set in motion  
**narrō, narrāre, narrāvī, narrātum:** to tell, relate  
**Olympus, ī m.:** Mt. Olympus, home of the gods  
**pius, a, um:** dutiful, devoted to the gods  
**plēnus, a, um:** full  
**portō, portāre, portāvī, portātum:** to bring, carry  
**quasi:** (conj. and adv.) as if  
**rēgia, ae f.:** palace, royal house  
**secō, secāre, secuī, sectum:** to cut  
**sedeō, sedēre, sēdī, sessum:** to sit  
**sella, ae f.:** seat  
**signum, ī n.:** sign, mark, statue  
**simulācrum, ī n.:** image, likeness  
**sub:** (prep. + abl.) under  
**summus, a, um:** highest  
**supplicō, supplicāre, supplicāvī, supplicātum:** to worship, entreat (+ dat.)  
**tectum, ī n.:** roof, building  
**tenebrae, ārum f. pl.:** shadows, shade, darkness  
**torreō, torrēre, torruī, tostum:** to burn, roast  
**tyrannus, ī m.:** an absolute ruler, tyrant  
**vērūm, ī n.:** the truth  
**victima, ae f.:** a sacrificial victim  
**vocō, vocāre, vocāvī, vocātum:** to call, summon  
**volō, volāre, volāvī, volātum:** to fly, move quickly  
**vōtum, ī n.:** prayer, wish  
**vulgus, ī m.:** common people, crowd

- 9 movet, et iactō flammās dē caelō. Lycāōn territus cursat. In labiīs spūmat. Agnōs  
10 videt, et cruentāre terga nivea avet. Formāre verba frūstrā temptat, et tantum  
11 exululat. Vestīmenta in villōs mūtant. Lacertī in crūra mūtant. Nunc trucīdāre  
12 gaudet. Lupus est, sed vestīgia formae servat. Capillī sunt cānī. Oculī lūcent.  
13 Lycāōn poenās multās dat!”
- 14 Aliī verba probant, aliī in silentiō nūtant. Iuppiter castīgāre virōs optat. Auster  
15 pluviū volat, et Neptūnus undīs magnīs iuvat. Est dīlūvium immensum! Sic īra  
16 Iovis est.

### Commentary

11 *Lacertī in crūra mūtant*: *crūra* is accusative plural.

13 *Lycāōn poenās multās dat*: The phrase *dare . . . poenās* is an idiom which means *to pay the penalty*.

**agnus, ī m.:** lamb

**aliī . . . aliī:** some . . . others

**alius, alia, aliud:** (adj. and pron.) another, other, different

**cānus, a, um:** white, grey

**capillus, ī m.:** hair

**castīgō, castīgāre, castīgāvī, castīgātum:** to punish

**cruentō, cruentāre, cruentāvī, cruentātum:** to make bloody

**crūs, crūris n.:** leg

**cursō, cursāre, cursāvī, cursātum:** to run to and fro

**dīluvium, ī n.:** flood

**exululō, exululāre, exululāvī, exululātum:** to howl loudly

**formō, formāre, formāvī, formātum:** to form, shape, fashion

**frūstrā:** (adv.) in vain

**gaudeō, gaudēre, gāvīsus sum:** to rejoice, be glad

**iactō, iactāre, iactāvī, iactātum:** to throw, hurl

**immensus, a, um:** huge

**iuvō, iuvāre, iūvī, iūtum:** to help, aid, please, delight

**labia, ae f.:** lip

**lacertus, ī m.:** arm

**lūceō, lucēre, luxī:** to be bright, gleam

**lupus, ī m.:** a wolf

**mūtō, mūtāre, mūtāvī, mūtātum:** to change

**Neptūnus, ī m.:** Neptune, god of the sea

**niveus, a, um:** snowy, white

**nunc:** (adv.) now

**nūtō, nūtāre, nūtāvī, nūtātum:** to nod

**oculus, ī m.:** eye

**pluvius, a, um:** rainy

**poena, ae f.:** punishment

**probō, probāre, probāvī, probātum:** to approve

**sic:** (adv.) thus

**silentium, ī n.:** silence

**spūmō, spūmāre, spūmāvī, spūmātum:** to foam

**tantum:** (adv.) only, to such a degree

**temptō, temptāre, temptāvī, temptātum:** to attempt, try

**tergum, ī n.:** back

**territus, a, um:** thoroughly scared

**trucidō, trucidāre, trucidāvī, trucidātum:** to slaughter

**verbum, ī n.:** word

**vestigium, ī n.:** footprint, trace

**vestimentum, ī n.:** garment

**videō, vidēre, vīdī, vīsum:** to see

**villus, ī m.:** shaggy hair

**SECOND CONJUGATION PRESENT  
INDICATIVE ACTIVE**

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<i>1st Person</i>	torreō	torrēmus
<i>2nd Person</i>	torrēs	torrētis
<i>3rd Person</i>	torret	torrent

Lycaon, whose name probably comes from the Greek word for wolf, is sometimes considered to be the first werewolf. Ovid follows the tradition that Lycaon offended the gods by serving human flesh to them, but other sources report that the king of Arcadia sacrificed a human infant to Zeus Lycaeus. In the *Republic*, Plato alludes to men becoming wolves—a transformation known as lycanthropy—after eating human flesh at a human sacrifice on Mt. Lycaeon in Arcadia. The ancient Greek geographer Pausanias says that these men would return to human form after nine years, provided that they abstained from eating human flesh.



# Taylor & Francis

Taylor & Francis Group

<http://taylorandfrancis.com>

## 4 Deucalion and Pyrrha

(*Met.* 1.313–415)

*One man and one woman, both pious and good, are saved from the flood by Jupiter and must repopulate the land.*

- 1 Diluvium adhūc immēsum est. Phōcis Āoniam ab Oetaeis arvīs sēparat. Ibi est
- 2 mōns Parnāsus. Deucaliōn cum consorte in parvā rate nāvigat, et hūc appropinquat.
- 3 Prīmum nymphās et nūmina montis adōrant. Tunc Themīn, deam fātīdicam,
- 4 adōrant. Ibi dea ōrāculum tenet. Deucaliōn bonus est, et Pyrrha, uxor eius, casta
- 5 est. Sēper dīs supplicant. Iuppiter hominēs bonōs videt, et īra eius nōn manet.
- 6 Undae removent. Orbis terrārum redditus est. Deucaliōn dēsōlātās terrās videt, et
- 7 uxōrem cum multīs lacrimīs appellat: “Ō fēmīna, nōs duo turba sumus! Aqua
- 8 cētera possidet. Exempla hominum manēmus.” Duo flent. Tum, deae supplicant, et
- 9 vōta multa dant: “Themī, signa nōbīs dā! Quōmodo terrās sānāmus? Quōmodo

### Commentary

**3–4 Tunc Themīn . . . adōrant:** Themīn is a Greek accusative singular.

**6 Orbis terrārum redditus est:** orbis terrārum means *the world*.

**7 Ō fēmīna, nōs duo turba sumus:** Think of this sentence as *Ō fēmīna, nōs duo sumus turba!* Ō can remain untranslated. Ovid’s use of *turba* is comic since there are only two humans left in the world.

**8 Exempla hominum manēmus:** Exempla is in the nominative. Translate: *We remain as examples of humans*.

**9 Themī, signa nōbīs dā:** Themī is in the vocative.

**ā/ab:** (prep. + abl.) from, away from

**adhūc:** (adv.) still

**adōro, adōrāre, adōrāvī, adōrātum:** to entreat, worship

**Āonia, ae f.:** Aonia, part of the region of Boeotia in Greece

**appellō, appellāre, appellāvī, appellātum:** to address, name

**arvum, ī n.:** field

**bonus, a, um:** good

**castus, a, um:** clean, chaste, pious

**cēterī, ae, a:** others, rest

**consors, consortis m. or f.:** one who has an equal share, partner, wife

**dēsōlātus, a, um:** desolate, forsaken

**Deucaliōn, Deucaliōnis m.:** Deucalion, a son of Prometheus

**duo, duae, duo:** two

**exemplum, ī n.:** example

**fātidicus, a, um:** speaking fate, prophetic

**fēmina, ae f.:** woman

**fleō, flēre, flēvī, flētum:** to weep

**homō, hominis m.:** man, human being

**hūc:** (adv.) to this place

**ibi:** (adv.) there, in that place

**is, ea, id:** (third person pron.) eius (gen.) he, she, it, this, that

**lacrima, ae f.:** tear

**maneō, manēre, mansī, mansum:** to remain, stay

**mōns, montis m.:** mountain

**nūmen, nūminis n.:** divinity, divine spirit

**nympha, ae f.:** nymph

**Oetaeus, a, um:** of Oeta, the mountain range between Thessaly and Macedonia

**ōrāculum, ī n.:** oracle, divine utterance, place of prophecy

**orbis, orbis m.:** circle, coil

**Parnāsus, ī m.:** Parnassus, a mountain in Phocis sacred to Apollo

**parvus, a, um:** small, little

**Phōcis, Phōcidis f.:** Phocis, a district in central Greece

**possideō, possidēre, possēdī, possessum:** to possess, hold

**Pyrrha, ae f.:** Pyrrha, a daughter of Epimetheus

**quōmodo:** (adv.) in what manner, how

**ratis, ratis f.:** raft, boat

**redditus, a, um:** given back, restored

**removeō, removēre, remōvī, remōtum:** to move back, withdraw

**sānō, sārāre, sārāvī, sārātum:** to cure, restore to health

**semper:** (adv.) always

**sēparō, sēparāre, sēparāvī, sēparātum:** to disjoin, sever, separate

**teneō, tenēre, tenuī, tentum:** to hold

**Themis, Themis f.:** Themis, a Greek goddess of the earth and justice

**tunc:** (adv.) then

**turba, ae f.:** crowd, mob

**uxor, uxoris f.:** wife

- 10      fēminās et virōs fabricāmus?” Vōta deam movent, et dea sortem dat: “Ē templō  
11      ambulāte, et ossa mātris post tergum iactāte!” Deucaliōn et Pyrrha stupent. Diū in  
12      silentiō stant. Nōn iactāre ossa mātrum mortuārum avent. Deinde Deucaliōn  
13      adsevērāt: “Māter est terra, et lapidēs sunt ossa mātris!” Statim lapidēs post  
14      vestīgia iactant. Subitō lapidēs mollitiā habent, et fōrmās paene hūmānās habent,  
15      ut statuāe coeptae dē marmore inconditae sunt. Pars ūmida et terrēna lapidis  
16      carnōsa est, et pars solida os est. Fēminae et virī sunt!

### Commentary

**15 ut statuāe coeptae dē marmore inconditae sunt:** Ovid compares the rocks which change into human bodies to statues which are in the process of being carved from a block of marble.

**adseverō, adseverāre, adseverāvī,**

**adseverātum:** to assert with confidence

**ambulō, ambulāre, ambulāvī, ambulātum:**  
to walk

**coeptus, a, um:** begun

**deinde:** (adv.) from that place, next, then

**diū:** (adv.) for a long time

**ē/ex:** (prep. + abl.) out of, from

**habeō, habēre, habuī, habitum:** to have, hold

**inconditus, a, um:** disorderly, not clearly  
arranged, hidden in

**lapis, lapidis m.:** a stone

**marmor, marmoris n.:** marble

**māter, mātris f.:** mother

**mollitia, ae f.:** softness

**mortuus, a, um:** dead

**os, ossis n.:** bone

**paene:** (adv.) almost

**pars, partis f.:** a part, portion

**post:** (prep. + acc.) behind, after

**solidus, a, um:** solid

**sors, sortis f.:** a lot, fortune, oracular  
response

**statim:** (adv.) immediately

**statua, ae f.:** statue, image

**stō, stāre, steti, statum:** to stand

**stupeō, stupēre, stupui:** to be struck dumb,  
be stunned

**templum, ī n.:** temple

**terrēnus, a, um:** earthen, of the earth

**ūmidus, a, um:** moist

**ut:** (adv.) as, just as

**THIRD DECLENSION****Masculine/feminine**

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<i>Nominative</i>	uxor	uxōrēs
<i>Genitive</i>	uxōris	uxōrum
<i>Dative</i>	uxōrī	uxōribus
<i>Accusative</i>	uxōrem	uxōrēs
<i>Ablative</i>	uxōre	uxōribus

**Neuter**

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<i>Nominative</i>	os	ossa
<i>Genitive</i>	ossis	ossum
<i>Dative</i>	ossi	ossibus
<i>Accusative</i>	os	ossa
<i>Ablative</i>	osse	ossibus

**i-stem masculine/feminine**

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<i>Nominative</i>	orbis	orbēs
<i>Genitive</i>	orbis	orbium
<i>Dative</i>	orbī	orbibus
<i>Accusative</i>	orbem	orbēs
<i>Ablative</i>	orbe	orbibus

**i-stem neuter**

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<i>Nominative</i>	animal	animālia
<i>Genitive</i>	animālis	animālium
<i>Dative</i>	animālī	animālibus
<i>Accusative</i>	animal	animālia
<i>Ablative</i>	animālī	animālibus

Ovid's description of a great flood resonates with accounts of floods in *Genesis* and in the Near Eastern *Epic of Gilgamesh*. The appearance of similar material in multiple texts is known as intertextuality. The story about Deucalion's and Pyrrha's recovery from the flood is particularly notable for its description of how people grow from the rocks which the two elderly people throw. The explicit comparison of the changing rocks to statues in the beginning stages of carving is reflective of the poet's general focus on art and artists in the poem, readily apparent earlier in the story of creation.

## 5 Apollo and Python

(*Met.* 1.416–451)

*Apollo, the god of music and poetry, athletics, and prophecy, slays the monstrous serpent Python and establishes athletic games to commemorate his victory.*

- 1 Nunc sunt novī virī et fēminae, atque terra ipsa cētera animālia dat. Antīquus ūmor
- 2 igne sōlis percalescit. Sīc Nilus septemfluus agrōs madidōs dēserit, et in alveō fluit.
- 3 Agricolae plūrima animālia sub glabīs versīs vident. Ubi ūmor et calor miscent, est
- 4 anima. Partim terra figūrās antīquās dat, et partim monstra nova creat. Terra
- 5 quoque tē, maxime Pŷthōn, creat. Pŷthōn est immēnsa serpēns, incognita. Est
- 6 terror novīs populīs. Tantum spatīi dē monte tenet. Deus arcitenēns monstrum
- 7 multīs sagittīs perdit. Apollō mille tēla iactat, et pharetra est paene exhausta.
- 8 Venēnum magnae serpentis per vulnera nigra effundit. Sīc deus monstrum vincit.
- 9 Apollō tenēre fāmam victōriae in memoriā optat. Lūdōs magnōs instituit, et
- 10 certāmina “Pŷthia” ā nōmine magnae serpentis victae vocat. In lūdīs, iuvenēs
- 11 pugnīs, pedibus, et rotā certant. Victōrēs honor aesculeae frondis capiunt.
- 12 Laurea nōndum est.

### Commentary

**1–2 *Antīquus ūmor igne sōlis percalescit*:** When the waters of the great flood start to subside, the moisture held in the soil heats up and causes the seeds of various forms of life to grow. *igne* is an ablative of means. Translate: *by means of the fire* or *with the fire*.

**4 *Partim terra figūrās antīquās dat*:** These are the species which existed before the great flood.

**4–5 *Terra quoque tē, maxime Pŷthōn, creat*:** Ovid varies his narrative style by addressing the Python directly.

**6 *Tantum spatīi dē monte tenet*:** The word *tantus*, *a*, *um* is used here as a neuter substantive, and it governs the genitive *spatīi*. Thus, the phrase is translated *such a great space*. The Python covers a large expanse of land on Mt. Parnassus.

**10–11 *In lūdīs, iuvenēs pugnīs, pedibus, et rotā certant*:** The words *pugnīs*, *pedibus*, and *rotā* are ablatives of means and indicate boxing matches, foot races, and chariot races.

<b>aesculeus, a, um:</b> of oak	<b>monstrum, ī n.:</b> monster, supernatural thing or event, wonder
<b>ager, agrī m.:</b> field	<b>niger, nigra, nigrum:</b> black, dark
<b>agricola, ae m.:</b> farmer	<b>Nīlus, ī m.:</b> Nile, a river in Egypt
<b>alveus, ī m.:</b> a hollow, cavity, bed of a stream	<b>nōmen, nōminis n.:</b> name
<b>anima, ae f.:</b> life, breath, soul	<b>nōndum:</b> (adv.) not yet
<b>animal, animālis n.:</b> animal	<b>partim . . . partim:</b> (adv.) in part . . . in part
<b>antīquus, a, um:</b> old, ancient	<b>per:</b> (prep. + acc.) by, through, because of
<b>Apollō, Apollinis m.:</b> Apollo, god of music, athletics, and prophecy	<b>percalescō, percalescere, percaluī:</b> to become warm
<b>arcitenēns, arcitenentis:</b> bow-holding, epithet of Apollo	<b>perdō, perdere, perdidī, perditum:</b> to ruin, destroy
<b>atque:</b> (conj.) and, and indeed	<b>pēs, pedis m.:</b> the foot
<b>calor, calōris m.:</b> heat	<b>pharetra, ae f.:</b> quiver
<b>capiō, capere, cēpī, captum:</b> to seize, take	<b>plūrimus, a, um:</b> very much, very many
<b>certāmen, certāminis n.:</b> contest, competition	<b>populus, ī m.:</b> people
<b>certō, certāre, certāvī, certātum:</b> to compete	<b>pugnus, ī m.:</b> the fist
<b>dēserō, dēserere, dēseruī, dēsertum:</b> to leave, abandon, forsake	<b>Pŷthia, Pŷthiōrum n.:</b> the Pythian Games
<b>effundō, effundere, effūdī, effusum:</b> to pour out	<b>Pŷthōn, Pŷthōnis m.:</b> Python, a huge serpent
<b>exhaustus, a, um:</b> empty, exhausted	<b>quoque:</b> (conj.) also, too
<b>fāma, ae f.:</b> fame, reputation, story	<b>rota, ae f.:</b> wheel
<b>figūra, ae f.:</b> form, figure, shape	<b>sagitta, ae f.:</b> arrow
<b>fluō, fluere, fluxī, fluxum:</b> to flow	<b>septemfluus, a, um:</b> flowing sevenfold, seven-mouthed
<b>frons, frondis f.:</b> leaf, foliage	<b>serpēns, serpentis f. or m.:</b> creeping thing, snake
<b>glæba, ae f.:</b> a lump of earth, clod, ball	<b>sōl, sōlis m.:</b> sun
<b>honor, honoris n.:</b> honor, prize	<b>spatium, ī n.:</b> space, extent
<b>ignis, ignis m.:</b> fire	<b>tantus, a, um:</b> so much, so great
<b>incognitus, a, um:</b> unknown	<b>tēlum, ī n.:</b> dart, arrow, spear
<b>instituō, instituere, instituī, institūtum:</b> to put in place, establish	<b>terror, terrōris m.:</b> fright, dread, object which causes fear
<b>iuvenis, iuvenis m. or f.:</b> young person, youth	<b>ubi:</b> (adv.) when, where
<b>laurea, ae f.:</b> the laurel tree	<b>ūmor, ūmōris m.:</b> moisture, fluid
<b>lūdus, ī m.:</b> game	<b>venēnum, ī n.:</b> poison, venom
<b>madidus, a, um:</b> wet	<b>versus, a, um:</b> turned over
<b>maximus, a, um:</b> greatest	<b>victor, victōris m.:</b> victor, winner
<b>memoria, memoriae f.:</b> memory	<b>victōria, ae f.:</b> victory
<b>mille:</b> (indecl. numer.) a thousand	<b>victus, a, um:</b> conquered
<b>misceō, miscēre, miscuī, mixtum:</b> to mingle, mix	<b>vincō, vincere, vīcī, victum:</b> to conquer
	<b>vulnus, vulneris n.:</b> a wound

**THIRD CONJUGATION****Present indicative active**

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<i>1st person</i>	instituo	instituiamus
<i>2nd person</i>	instituis	instituitis
<i>3rd person</i>	instituit	institiunt

**-io present indicative active**

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<i>1st person</i>	facio	facimus
<i>2nd person</i>	facis	facitis
<i>3rd person</i>	facit	faciunt

The *Homeric Hymn to Apollo*, which may date to as early as the eighth century BCE, tells the story of Apollo's birth on Delos and subsequent founding of his sanctuary at Delphi. In that Greek poem, Hera entrusts the monster Typhaon to the care of a she-serpent, but Apollo slays the giant snake and leaves the corpse to rot in the sun. Thus, the Python takes its name from the Greek verb "pythein," meaning "to rot." Delphi itself was also called Pytho, and the panhellenic games held there in honor of Apollo were called the Pythian Games. The laurel tree was sacred to Apollo, so victors at these games received crowns of laurel leaves as prizes. Ovid goes on to explain how the laurel becomes sacred to Apollo in the next story.



# Taylor & Francis

Taylor & Francis Group

<http://taylorandfrancis.com>

## 6 Apollo and Daphne

(*Met.* 1.452–567)

*Ovid describes Apollo's first experience with erotic pursuit in wonderful comic detail. Here, he loses Daphne but gains a sacred tree.*

- 1 Prīmus amor Phoebī erat Daphnē Pēnēia. Daphnē formam bellam habēbat. Dēlius
- 2 Cupīdinem cum sagittīs vidēbat, et Apollō glōriōsus deum amōris dērīdēbat. “Quid
- 3 tibi est, lascīve puer, lūdere cum armīs? Arma umerōs meōs decent. Pŷthōn est
- 4 mortuus, et factum est meum. Ego sōlus vincere tanta monstra possum. Irrītāre
- 5 tantum amōrēs dēbēs.” Cupīdō plēnus īrae saevae est. Deus amōris dīcit: “Sagitta
- 6 tua cētera figere potest, sed sagitta mea tē figere potest!”
- 7 Cupīdō duo tēla ē pharetrā prōmit. Sagitta aurea amōrem facit; tēlum plumbeum
- 8 amōrem fugat. Apollinem aureā sagittā vulnerat, et Daphnēn plumbeā sagittā
- 9 vulnerat. Prōtinus alter amat, altera nōmen amantis fugit. Deus nympham amat, et
- 10 cōnūbium Daphnēs cupit. Utque stipulae conflārant, ut saepēs ardent cum forte
- 11 viātor vel facēs nimis admovet vel facēs sub lūce relinquit, sīc deus in flammās
- 12 abit. Sua ōrācula deum fallunt. Apollō capillōs et oculōs nymphae videt. Osculum
- 13 videt, et nōn satis vidēre osculum. Cupit bāsiāre nympham. Deus digitōs et lacertōs
- 14 nūdōs laudat. Daphnē, territa, currit.

### Commentary

**1 *Prīmus amor ... Daphnē:*** *Daphnē* is a Greek name meaning *laurel*. The genitive is *Daphnēs*, and the accusative is *Daphnēn*.

**2–3 *Quid tibi est ... lūdere cum armīs:*** Apollo's question is an expression in which a dative of reference is used with the interrogative word *quid* to mean *what use is it for you?*

**10–12 *Utque stipulae conflārant ... sīc deus in flammās abit:*** Ovid uses the images of stalks of grain and hedges burning when a torch comes too close to capture the intensity of Apollo's urgent desire. The comparison is relatively common in Latin poetry. *sub lūce* means, literally, *under the light* but indicates *at dawn*.

**12 *Sua ōrācula deum fallunt:*** Apollo is a god of prophecy. Here, he is so overcome with desire for Daphne that he cannot console himself in the way he might console someone visiting his oracle.

**abēō, abīre, abivī or abī, abitum:** to go away, pass into a state  
**admoveō, admovēre, admōvī, admōtum:** to move towards  
**alter . . . altera:** the one . . . the other  
**alter, altera, alterum:** one of two  
**amāns, amantis m. or f.:** lover  
**amor, amoris m.:** love  
**ardeō, ardēre, arsi:** to burn, glow  
**bāsiō, bāsiāre, bāsiāvī, bāsiatum:** to kiss  
**bellus, a, um:** beautiful  
**conflagrō, conflagrāre, conflagrāvī, conflagrātum:** to catch fire, burn up  
**cōnūbium, ī n.:** marriage  
**Cupīdo, Cupīdinis m.:** Cupid, the god of love (**cupīdo, cupidinis f.:** desire)  
**cupiō, cupere, cupivī, cupitum:** to desire, yearn for  
**currō, currere, cucurrī, cursum:** to run  
**Daphnē, ēs f.:** Daphne, a nymph  
**dēbeō, dēbere, dēbuī, dēbitum:** to owe, ought  
**decet, decēre, decuit:** (often impers. verb) it is proper, seemly, fitting (+ acc. of thing fitted)  
**Dēlius, ī m.:** of Delos, epithet of Apollo  
**dērideō, dēridere, dērisī, dērisum:** to laugh at, mock  
**dīco, dīcere, dixī, dictum:** to say, speak  
**digitus, ī m.:** finger  
**faciō, facere, fecī, factum:** to make, do  
**factum, ī n.:** deed, act  
**fallō, fallere, fefellī, falsum:** to deceive, lead astray, disappoint  
**fax, facis f.:** torch  
**figō, figere, fixī, fixum:** to fix, fasten, thrust a weapon  
**fors, forte (abl.) f.:** luck, chance

**fugō, fugāre, fugāvī, fugātum:** to cause to flee, chase away  
**fugiō, fugere, fugī, fugitum:** to flee  
**glōriōsus, a, um:** haughty, boastful, famous  
**irritō, irritāre, irritāvī, irritātum:** to stir up, incite  
**lascīvus, a, um:** playful, insolent  
**laudō, laudāre, laudāvī, laudātum:** to praise  
**lūdō, lūdere, lūsī, lūsum:** to play, frolic, trick  
**lux, lūcis f.:** light  
**nimis:** (adv.) too much  
**nūdus, a, um:** naked  
**osculum, ī n.:** lips, mouth, kiss  
**Pēnēius, a, um:** of Peneus, a river-god  
**Phoebus, ī m.:** Phoebus, epithet of Apollo  
**plumbeus, a, um:** made of lead  
**possum, posse, potuī:** to be able, have in one's power  
**prīmus, a, um:** first, foremost  
**prōmō, prōmere, prompsī, promptum:** to bring forth, produce  
**prōtinus:** (adv.) further, immediately  
**puer, puerī m.:** boy  
**relinquō, relinquere, reliquī, relictum:** to leave behind  
**saepes, is f.:** a hedge  
**saevus, a, um:** savage, fierce  
**satis:** (indecl. adj. and adv.) enough  
**sōlus, a, um:** alone, only  
**stipula, ae f.:** stalk of grain, grain-stubble  
**tuus, a, um:** (poss. adj.) your  
**umerus, ī m.:** upper arm, shoulder  
**viātor, viātōris m.:** a traveler  
**vulnerō, vulnerāre, vulnerāvī, vulnerātum:** to wound

15 “Manē, nympha!” Apollō inquit, “Tē amō! Nōn hostis sum. Nōn agricola, et hīc  
 16 horridus armenta nōn observō. Nōn sine fāmā sum! Deus poētārum et athlētārum  
 17 sum. Amor mihi causa studiī est.” Daphnē fugit et ōrat: “Pater, opem fer!” Sine  
 18 morā, forma nymphae mūtāt. Torpor membra occupat. Forma nymphae frondōsa  
 19 est, et brachia in rāmōs crescunt. Subitō Daphnē est laurea. Adhūc Apollō  
 20 nympham amat. Deus bāsia laureae dat, et laurea abhorret. Deus dīcit: “Sī mea  
 21 puella esse nōn potes, dēbēs esse arbor mea.” Procul Cupīdō rīdet.

### Commentary

**15 *Nōn hostis sum:*** Apollo tries to convince Daphne that he is not a threat to her here, but later in the epic the god is portrayed as a rapist.

**17 *Pater, opem fer:*** *fer* is an irregular second person singular imperative.

**20–1 *Sī mea puella esse nōn potes:*** In English, the word order would be *sī nōn potes esse mea puella*.

**abhorreō, abhorrēre, abhorruī:** to shrink

back from, shudder at

**amō, amāre, amāvī, amātum:** to love

**arbor, arboris f.:** tree

**armentum, ī n.:** herd, flock

**athlēta, ae m.:** athlete, contender

**bāsium, ī n.:** kiss

**bracchium, ī n.:** arm

**causa, ae f.:** cause, reason

**crescō, crescere, crēvī, crētum:** to grow

**ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum:** to bear, carry,  
endure

**frondōsus, a, um:** leafy

**hīc:** (adv.) here, in this place

**horridus, a, um:** unkempt, rough, uncouth,  
horrible

**hostis, hostis m.:** enemy

**inquit, inquiunt:** he, she, it says, they say

**membrum, ī n.:** limb

**mora, ae f.:** delay, pause

**observō, observāre, observāvī,**

**observātum:** to watch, regard, attend to

**occupō, occupāre, occupāvī, occupātum:** to  
take hold of, seize, master

**ops, opis f.:** resource, help, assistance

**orō, orāre, orāvī, orātum:** to speak, beg, pray

**pater, patris m.:** father

**poēta, ae m.:** poet

**procul:** (adv.) far away, at a distance, from afar

**puella, ae f.:** girl

**rāmus, ī m.:** branch

**rīdeō, rīdēre, rīsī, rīsum:** to smile,  
laugh at

**sī:** (conj.) if

**studium, ī n.:** eagerness, pursuit

**torpor, torpōris m.:** sluggishness, dullness

**IMPERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE****First conjugation**

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<i>1st person</i>	basiābam	basiābāmus
<i>2nd person</i>	basiābās	basiābātis
<i>3rd person</i>	basiābat	basiābant

**Second conjugation**

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<i>1st person</i>	dēridēbam	dēridēbāmus
<i>2nd person</i>	dēridēbās	dēridēbātis
<i>3rd person</i>	dēridēbat	dēridēbant

**Third conjugation**

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<i>1st person</i>	fallēbam	fallēbāmus
<i>2nd person</i>	fallēbās	fallēbātis
<i>3rd person</i>	fallēbat	fallēbant

**Third conjugation -io**

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<i>1st person</i>	faciēbam	faciēbāmus
<i>2nd person</i>	faciēbās	faciēbātis
<i>3rd person</i>	faciēbat	faciēbant

**esse**

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<i>1st person</i>	eram	erāmus
<i>2nd person</i>	erās	erātis
<i>3rd person</i>	erat	erant

Apollo was an important deity in Augustan Age Rome. After his victory over Mark Antony and Cleopatra at the Battle of Actium in 31 BCE, Augustus, then known as Octavian, embraced Apollo as a patron god. He built a temple to the god on the Palatine Hill which was connected to his own palace. Subsequently, many references to Apollo appeared in artistic images of the age. Augustus' doorposts were garlanded with the god's sacred laurel leaves as an honor, and this image was celebrated on coins from the period. Here, Apollo is depicted comically as he burns with lust for Daphne. He is also depicted as a potential rapist. Indeed, his role as a rapist is confirmed later in the epic on a tapestry which Arachne weaves featuring the exploits of male gods such as Jupiter, Apollo, Neptune, and Bacchus. One wonders how the emperor would have viewed Ovid's playful and even irreverent portrait of an amorous Apollo.

## 7 Phaethon

(*Met.* 2.1–400)

*Phoebus' son by Clymene, Phaethon, visits his father for the first time and foolishly tries to drive the chariot of the Sun.*

- 1 Phaethōn filius Phoebī est, sed puer numquam vidēre patrem potest. Phaethōn  
2 mātrem rogat: “Quis meus pater est?” Clymenē, mātēr Phaethōntis, dīcit: “Per  
3 iubar sōlis, nāte, ā Sōle satus es. Sī animus tē movet, pete vērū ā deō ipsō!”  
4 Phaethōn laetus ēmicat post verba mātis, et dīcit: “Ambulābō ad rēgiam Sōlis!”
- 5 Rēgia Sōlis erat alta sublīmibus columnīs. Rēgia clāra aurō et pyrōpō erat. Ebur  
6 nitidum summa fastīgia tegēbat. Valvae lūmine argentī radiābant. Opus mātēriam  
7 superābat. In valvīs ars caelāta Mulciberis erat: terrae, aquae, et caelum sunt. Terra  
8 silvās, ferās, nymphās habet. Unda caeruleōs deōs habet. In foribus dextrīs et  
9 sinistrīs, caelum bis sex signa habet: Virgō, Capricornus, Aquārius, Piscēs, Leō,  
10 Ariēs, Geminī, Taurus, Lībra, Sagittārius, Cancer, et Scorpiō. Phaethōn rēgiam  
11 Sōlis intrat. Vestīgia ad patriam faciem vertit, sed procul constat. Nōn ferre iubar  
12 potest. Phoebus, vėlātus veste purpureā, in soliō sedet. Solium smaragdīs clāris  
13 radiat. Ā dextrā et laevā Diēs et Mensis et Annus et Saecula stant. Hōrae sunt. Vēr  
14 novum cinctum corōnā flōrum est. Aestās spīcea sēta gerit. Autumnus sordidus  
15 ūvīs calcātis stat, et Hiems hirsūta cānōs capillōs habet.

### Commentary

**5 *Rēgia Sōlis erat alta sublīmibus columnīs*:** The ablative is used here to qualify the adjective *alta*. Translate: *high with lofty columns*.

**6–7 *Opus mātēriam superābat*:** The doors are constructed out of precious metals, but the craftsmanship of the engraved artwork is even more impressive than the shining metals.

**11 *Vestīgia ad patriam faciem vertit*:** *faciem* is accusative singular.

**13–15 *Vēr novum cinctum . . . capillōs habet*:** Each personified season is adorned with its own attributes.

**Aestās, Aestātis f.:** Summer, divine representation of the summertime  
**altus, a, um:** high, lofty  
**Annus, ī m.:** Year, divine representation of a year  
**argentum, ī n.:** silver  
**ars, artis f.:** skill, art, work of art  
**aurum, ī n.:** gold  
**Autumnus, ī m.:** Autumn, divine representation of the fall  
**bis:** (adv.) in two ways, double  
**caelātus, a, um:** carved, engraved  
**caeruleus, a, um:** greenish blue  
**calcātus, a, um:** stamped down, crushed  
**cinctus, a, um:** circled, encompassed  
**clārus, a, um:** clear, shining, brilliant  
**Clymenē, ēs f.:** Clymene, a nymph  
**columna, ae f.:** column, pillar  
**constō, constāre, constiti, constātum:** to stand, stand firm, stand unchanging  
**corōna, ae f.:** garland, wreath, crown  
**dexter, dextra, dextrum (or dextera, dexterum):** right, on the right  
**Diēs, Diēi m. or f.:** Day, divine representation of a day  
**ebur, eboris n.:** ivory  
**ēmicō, ēmicāre, ēmicuī, ēmicātum:** to spring out, break forth  
**faciēs, faciēi f.:** form, shape, face  
**fastīgium, ī n.:** gable, pediment  
**fera, ae f.:** wild animal, beast  
**filius, ī m.:** son  
**flōs, flōris m.:** flower  
**foris, foris f.:** door, gate  
**gerō, gerere, gessī, gestum:** to bear, carry, carry out, display  
**Hōrae, ārum f.:** Hours, goddesses of time and seasons  
**Hiems, Hiemis f.:** Winter, divine representation of the winter  
**hirsūtus, a, um:** rough, shaggy, bristly  
**intrō, intrāre, intrāvī, intrātum:** to walk into, enter  
**iubar, iubaris n.:** light, brightness, sunshine

**laetus, a, um:** joyful, happy, delighted  
**laevus, a, um:** left side  
**lūmen, lūminis n.:** light  
**Mensis, Mensis m.:** Month, divine representation of a month  
**Mulciber, Mulciberis m.:** epithet of Vulcan, god of craftsmanship  
**nātus, ī m.:** son  
**nitidus, a, um:** shining, bright  
**numquam:** (adv.) never  
**opus, operis n.:** work, art, workmanship  
**patrius, a, um:** fatherly, paternal  
**petō, petere, petīvī, petītum:** to seek, demand, beg  
**Phaethōn, Phaethōntis m.:** Phaethon, son of Clymene and Sōl  
**purpureus, a, um:** purple, crimson  
**pyrōpus, ī m.:** bronze  
**radiō, radiāre, radiāvī, radiātum:** to shine, radiate  
**rogō, rogāre, rogāvī, rogātum:** to ask  
**Saeculum, ī n.:** Generation, divine representation of a generation  
**satus, a, um:** sprung, born, sown  
**sertum, ī n.:** wreath, woven garland  
**sex:** (indecl. numer.) six  
**sinister, sinistra, sinistrum:** left, on the left  
**smaragdus, ī m.:** emerald  
**solium, ī n.:** seat  
**sordidus, a, um:** dirty, foul, sordid  
**spīceus, a, um:** of corn  
**sublīmis, e:** lofty, exalted, elevated  
**superō, superāre, superāvī, superātum:** to overcome, prevail, be greater than  
**tegō, tegere, texī, tectum:** cover, surround  
**ūva, ae f.:** grape  
**valvae, ārum f. pl.:** doors  
**vēlātus, a, um:** wrapped, covered, concealed  
**Vēr, Vēris n.:** Spring, divine representation of the springtime  
**vertō, vertere, vertī, vertus:** to turn, turn around  
**vestis, vestis f.:** garment, clothing

- 16 Deus iuvenem videt, et dīcit: “Quae est tibi causa viae?” Phaethōn dīcit: “Sī  
 17 Clymenē culpam sub falsā imāgine nōn cēlat, pignora dā, pater.” Phoebus rogat:  
 18 “Quid optās?” Phaethōn stultus dīcit: “Agere quadrīgās tuās cupiō.” Sōl clāmat:  
 19 “Stulte! Agere quadrīgās Sōlis est officiū deōrum, nōn virōrum. Perīculum erit  
 20 magnum. Agere equōs Sōlis nōn poteris!” Phaethōn dīcit: “Sī pater meus es, dā  
 21 votum meum!” Sine morā, deus quadrīgās aureās fīliō monstrat. Quadrīgae  
 22 gemmīs radiant. Habēnās fīliō dat, et monet: “Habē habēnās, et nōlī agere nimium  
 23 equōs.”
- 24 Aurōra appāret, et stellās fugat. Phaethōn habēnās habet, sed equī per sē festīnant.  
 25 Ut nāviculae curvae sine saburrā labant per undās, sic quadrīgae, sine magistrō  
 26 solitō, per nimbōs labant. Phaethōn pavet. Puer equōs ferōs nōn temperat. Equī in  
 27 viā solitā nōn currunt, et perīculum magnum mundō est! Gelidae zōnae radiīs sōlis  
 28 calescent, et nimbī ambustī fūmant. Herba, flōrēs, et pābula ardent. Silvae et rīpae  
 29 ardent. Radii sōlis aquās siccant. Helicon, Aetna, et Parnāsus in flammīs sunt.  
 30 Ostia septem pulverulenta Nīlī perterritī vacant. Nēreus et Dōris et nātae sē in  
 31 antrīs tepidīs cēlant. Phaethōn valdē timet. Iuppiter quadrīgās effrēnātās videt, et  
 32 timet. Exitium terrārum erit. Iuppiter remedium flammārum optat. Deus tonat, et  
 33 fulmen deī Phaethōntem necat. Terrae superant. Nāiades corpusculum Phaethōntis  
 34 in tumulum pōnunt, et signum in saxō faciunt: HĪC SITUS EST PHAETHŌN.  
 35 QUADRĪGAS PATERNAS NŌN TENĒRE POTERAT, SED MAGNA  
 36 TEMPTĀBAT.

## Commentary

**19 *Agere quadrīgās Sōlis est officiū deōrum*:** The infinitive *agere* serves as the subject of the verb *est*. Because it is an infinitive, it also takes the object *quadrīgās*.

**22–3 *nōlī agere nimium equōs*:** *nōlī* plus an infinitive indicates a negative command. Translate: *do not drive*.

**30–1 *Nēreus et Dōris et nātae sē in antrīs tepidīs cēlant*:** The word *se* in this sentence is a reflexive pronoun in the accusative case. Like the reflexive adjective *suus*, *a*, *um*, it derives its meaning from the subject. Here, since *Nēreus et Dōris et nātae* is the subject, translate: *Nereus and Doris and their daughters conceal themselves in tepid caves*.

**Aetna, ae f.:** Etna, a volcano in Sicily  
**agō, agere, ēgī, actum:** to drive, do, set in motion  
**ambustus, a, um:** burnt  
**antrum, ī n.:** cave, grotto  
**appāreō, appārere, appāruī, appāritum:** to appear, become visible  
**Aurōra, ae f.:** Dawn, divine representation of dawn  
**calescō, calescere:** to grow warm  
**cēlō, cēlare, cēlāvī, cēlātum:** to hide, conceal, cover  
**clāmō, clāmāre, clāmāvī, clāmātum:** to shout, make a loud noise, call to or upon  
**corpusculum, ī n.:** a small body  
**culpa, ae f.:** fault, blame  
**curvus, a, um:** curved, bent, arched  
**Dōris, Dōridos f.:** Doris, a sea nymph  
**effrēnātus, a, um:** ungoverned, unrestrained  
**equus, ī m.:** horse  
**exitium, ī n.:** destruction, ruin  
**falsus, a, um:** false, fake, deceitful  
**ferus, a, um:** untamed, wild, rough  
**festīnō, festīnāre, festīnāvī, festīnātum:** to hurry, make haste  
**fulmen, fulminis n.:** lightning, thunderbolt  
**fūmō, fūmare, fūmāvī, fūmātum:** to smoke, fume  
**gelidus, a, um:** cold, frozen, icy  
**gemma, ae f.:** jewel, gem  
**habēna, ae f.:** strap, rein  
**Helicon, Helicōnis m.:** Helicon, a mountain in Greece  
**imāgo, imāginis f.:** image, likeness  
**labō, labāre, labāvī, labātum:** to waver, totter  
**magister, magistrī m.:** master, teacher  
**moneō, monere, monuī, monitum:** to warn, admonish  
**monstrō, monstrāre, monstrāvī, monstrātum:** to show, point out, indicate

**Nāias, Nāiadis f.:** a Naiad, water nymph  
**nāta, ae f.:** daughter  
**necō, necāre, necāvī, necātum:** to kill, slay  
**nōlō, nōlle, nōluī:** to be unwilling  
 (nōlī = imperative)  
**Nēreus, ī m.:** Nereus, a god of the sea  
**nimbus, ī m.:** vapor, cloud  
**nimium:** (adv.) excessively, too much  
**officium, ī n.:** duty, position, service  
**ostium, ī n.:** door, entrance, mouth  
**pābulum, ī n.:** food, nourishment  
**paternus, a, um:** fatherly, paternal  
**paveō, pavēre, pāvī:** to be afraid, quake  
**perīculum, ī n.:** danger, risk  
**perterritus, a, um:** frightened, terrified  
**pignus, pignoris n.:** pledge, assurance  
**pōnō, pōnere, posuī, positum:** to place, put, put aside  
**pulverulentus, a, um:** dusty  
**quadrīgae, ārum f. pl.:** four-horse chariot  
**quī, quae, quod:** (interrog. adj.) which? what? what kind of?  
**radius, ī m.:** ray, spoke, shuttle for weaving  
**remedium, ī n.:** remedy, relief  
**saburra, ae f.:** sand, ballast  
**saxum, ī n.:** rock, crag  
**septem:** (indecl. numer.) seven  
**situs, a, um:** situated, buried  
**siccō, siccāre, siccāvī, siccātum:** to dry, dry up  
**solitus, a, um:** accustomed, usual  
**stultus, a, um:** foolish, silly  
**temperō, temperāre, temperāvī, temperātum:** to govern, manage  
**tepidus, a, um:** lukewarm, tepid  
**timeō, timēre, timuī:** to fear  
**tonō, tonāre, tonuī, tonitum:** to thunder  
**vacō, vacāre, vacāvī, vacātum:** to be empty  
**valdē:** (adv.) intensely, greatly  
**via, ae f.:** road, way, journey  
**zōna, ae f.:** zone, region, girdle

**FUTURE INDICATIVE ACTIVE****First conjugation**

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<i>1st person</i>	radiābō	radiābimus
<i>2nd person</i>	radiābis	radiābitis
<i>3rd person</i>	radiābit	radiābunt

**Second conjugation**

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<i>1st person</i>	sedēbō	sedēbimus
<i>2nd person</i>	sedēbis	sedēbitis
<i>3rd person</i>	sedēbit	sedēbunt

**Third conjugation**

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<i>1st person</i>	petam	petēmus
<i>2nd person</i>	petēs	petētis
<i>3rd person</i>	petet	petent

**Third conjugation -io**

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<i>1st person</i>	faciam	faciēmus
<i>2nd person</i>	faciēs	faciētis
<i>3rd person</i>	faciet	facient

**esse**

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<i>1st person</i>	erō	erimus
<i>2nd person</i>	eris	eritis
<i>3rd person</i>	erit	erunt

Ovid offers a detailed description of the carved artwork which adorns the doors of the Sun-god's palace in this story. This kind of rhetorical description is known as *ekphrasis*, which in Greek means "a speaking out." The rhetorical device is a convention of epic poetry and is used by earlier poets such as Homer, Apollonius Rhodius, Catullus, and Vergil. Notice how Ovid's description of the images on the doors recalls his earlier description of creation, which also features lands, bodies of water, and the heavens. Thus, the ekphrasis here is a microcosm of the more detailed version of creation which he offers at the beginning of the epic. Notice also how Ovid vividly describes the vision of the Sun surrounded by his attendants, which Phaethon first sees when he enters the palace, as if it is a carefully arranged work of art. Ovid thus blurs the boundaries between the ekphrasis and the primary narrative, again revealing his interest in visual art.

## 8 Cadmus and the founding of Thebes

(*Met.* 3.1–137)

*When Jupiter abducts Europa from Phoenicia, her father King Agenor tells his son Cadmus to find her. Cadmus is unsuccessful in finding his sister, who gives birth to King Minos on Crete, but he founds his own city in Boeotia. Thebes is where Oedipus will eventually rule as king.*

- 1 Eurōpa erat fīlia Agēnoris, rēgis Tyriōrum. Quandō Eurōpa Crētā in tergō taurī nat,  
2 Agēnōr iubet fīlium lustrāre terrās. Agēnōr exilium poenam addit. Cadmus, fīlius  
3 Agēnoris, cum comitibus orbem terrārum frūstrā pererrat (quis enim dēprenderē  
4 furta Iovis potest?). Cadmus Eurōpam nōn videt. Sīc Cadmus patriam et īram patris  
5 vītāt. Supplex ōrāculum Phoebī consulit, et deus dīcit: “Bōs tibi in arvīs occurret.  
6 Post vestīgia bovis ambulā, et, quā in herbā requiescit, fac moenia urbis, et vocā  
7 loca “Boeōtiam.”
- 8 Cadmus ex antrō Castaliō dēscendit. Bovem videt. Bōs lentē movet; Cadmus  
9 vestīgia bovis legit. Taciturnus Phoebum adōrat. Iuvenca multās hōrās adambulāt.  
10 Bōs dēnique in herbā recubat. Cadmus est valdē beātus, et grātēs agit. Tunc  
11 Cadmus sacrificāre Iovī optat, et iubet virōs petere aquās ē vīvīs fontibus. Silva  
12 vetus, violāta nullīs secūribus, prope stābat, et in mediā silvā erat spēlunca densa  
13 virgīs et vīminibus. Erat arcus, factus compāgine lapidum, et aqua fēcunda. In  
14 antrō erat anguis Martius praesignis cristā. Oculī igne micant, et omne corpus  
15 venēnō tumet. Trēs linguae vibrant, et dentēs triplicēs in ordine stant. Ubi Tyriī virī  
16 lūcum tangunt et urnās in undīs dēmittunt, sonant. Serpēns caeruleus ex antrō caput

### Commentary

**1 *Quandō Eurōpa Crētā in tergō taurī nat:*** *Crētā* is an accusative of place to which. The accusative is used without a preposition with cities, small islands, *domus*, and *rūs*.

**2 *Agēnōr exilium poenam addit:*** That is, Cadmus will suffer exile if he does not find his sister Europa. Understand *exilium* to be in apposition to *poenam*. Translate: *Agenor adds exile as a punishment.*

**5 *Supplex ōrāculum Phoebī consulit:*** The noun *supplex* here is in the nominative and stands in apposition to Cadmus, who is understood as the subject. Translate: *As a suppliant, he consults the oracle.*

**6 *fac moenia urbis:*** The word *fac* is an irregular second person singular present imperative of the verb *facere*.

**9 *Iuvenca multās hōrās adambulāt:*** *multās hōrās* is an example of an accusative of extent of time. Translate: *for many hours.*

**adambulō, adambulāre, adambulāvī,**

**adambulātum:** to walk near, walk about

**addō, addere, addidī, additum:** to add, join to

**Agēnor, Agēnoris m.:** Agenor, a king of Phoenicia

**anguis, anguis m. or f.:** serpent, snake

**arcus, ūs m.:** bow, arch

**Boeōtia, ae f.:** Boeotia, a region of Greece

**bōs, bovis m. or f.:** cow, ox

**Cadmus, ī m.:** Cadmus, son of Agenor

**Castalius, a, um.:** of Castalia, a fountain on Mt. Parnassus

**caput, capitis n.:** head

**compāgo, compāginis f.:** a joining together, structure

**consulō, consulere, consului, consultum:** to consider, consult

**corpus, corporis n.:** a body

**Crēta, ae f.:** Crete, an island in the Mediterranean Sea

**crista, ae f.:** crest

**dēmittō, dēmittere, dēmīsī, dēmissum:** send down, drop

**dēnique:** (adv.) finally, at last

**dens, dentis m.:** tooth

**densus, a, um:** thick, dense

**dēprendō, dēprendere, dēprendī, dēpremsum:** to catch hold of, detect, discover

**dēscendō, dēscendere, dēscendī,**

**dēscensum:** to go down, descend

**enim:** (conj.) indeed, in fact

**Eurōpa, ae f.:** Europa, daughter of the Phoenician King Agenor

**exilium, ī n.:** banishment, exile

**fēcundus, a, um:** fruitful, fertile

**filia, ae f.:** daughter

**fōns, fontis m.:** spring, fountain

**furtum, ī n.:** trick, deceit, secret love

**grātēs, ium f. pl.:** thanks

**iubeō, iubere, iūssī, iūssum:** to order, command

**iuvenca, ae f.:** cow

**legō, legere, lēgī, lectum:** to pick out, choose, read

**lentē:** (adv.) slowly

**lingua, ae f.:** tongue

**loca, ōrum n. pl.:** region

**lūcus, ī m.:** wood, grove

**Martius, a, um:** sacred to Mars, the god of war

**medius, a, um:** middle

**micō, micāre, micuī:** to vibrate, move rapidly, flicker

**moenia, ium n. pl.:** walls

**nō, nāre, nāvī:** to swim

**nullus, a, um:** none, not any

**occurrō, occurrere, occurri, occursum:** to meet, appear (often + dat.)

**omnis, e:** every, all

**ordo, ordinis m.:** row, line, order

**pererrō, pererrāre, pererrāvī, pererrātum:** to wander through

**praesignis, e:** remarkable, illustrious

**prope:** (adv.) nearby, near

**quā:** (adv.) where

**quandō:** (adv.) when

**recubō, recubāre, recubāvī, recubātum:** to lie back, recline

**requiescō, requiescere, requiēvī, requiētum:** to rest

**rēx, rēgis m.:** king

**secūris, is f.:** an axe, hatchet

**sonō, sonāre, sonuī, sonitum:** to make a noise, sound

**spēlunca, ae f.:** cave

**supplex, supplicis m.:** a suppliant, petitioner

**taciturnus, a, um:** quiet, silent

**tangō, tangere, tetigī, tactum:** to touch, reach, arrive at

**trēs, tria:** three

**triplex, triplicis:** triple

**tumeō, tumēre, tumuī:** to swell, be puffed up

**Tyrius, a, um:** of Tyre, a Phoenician city, purple

**urbs, urbis f.:** city

**urna, ae f.:** water jar, urn

**vetus, veteris:** old, ancient

**vibrō, vibrāre, vibrāvī, vibrātum:** to shake, quiver, vibrate

**vīmen, vīminis n.:** branch, twig

**violātus, a, um:** broken, injured

**virga, ae f.:** branch, twig

**vītō, vītāre, vītāvī, vītātum:** to escape, avoid

**vīvus, a, um:** living

17 trūdit, et sībila horrenda mittit. Urnae dē manibus virōrum effluunt, et sanguis  
 18 corpus relinquit. Tremor membra occupat. Serpēns orbēs squāmōsōs in volūbilibus  
 19 nexibus torquet. Ērēctus in aurās levēs stat, et omne nemus dēspicit. Statim  
 20 Phoenīcēs necat, sīve tēla sīve fugam parant. Virōs Cadmī dentibus, orbibus longīs,  
 21 et tābe fūnestā venēnī necat.

22 Intereā Cadmus virōs exspectat. Ubi sōl altissimus in caelō est, virōs vestīgat.  
 23 Tegumen eius est pellis leōnis; tēlum est lancea cuspidē ferreā; et animus est fortis.  
 24 Silvam intrat, et antrum videt. Tunc corpora lētāta et serpentem ingentem videt.  
 25 Anguis vulnera sanguinea virōrum lambit. Cadmus, plēnus furōris, magnum  
 26 lapidem iactat, sed serpēns sine vulnere manet. Cadmus tunc necāre immēnsū  
 27 serpentem lanceā temptat, sed tēlum corium squāmōsum nōn vincit. Nunc serpēns  
 28 plēnus īrae est. Post multās plāgās, Cadmus īrātus dēnique anguem Martium necat.

29 Dum victor spatium hostis victi consīderat, subitō vōx sonat. Vōx dīcit: “Quid  
 30 serpentem victum spectās? Tū serpēns eris, et virī tē spectābunt.” Cadmus pavet  
 31 timōre. Sed Pallas adest. Pallas Cadmum arāre terram et suppōnere dentēs vīpereōs  
 32 iubet. Cadmus deae pāret, et dentēs ut sēmina spargit. Terra movēre incipit, et virī  
 33 armātī ā dentibus sparsīs surgunt. Virī inter sē pugnant. Quinque virī superant, et  
 34 Cadmus quīnque virōs comitēs habet. Iam Thēbae stant.

## Commentary

**18–19 *Serpēns orbēs squāmōsōs in volūbilibus nexibus torquet*:** *orbēs* here means *coils*. Ovid’s poetic language creates a vivid image of the snake’s twisted body.

**19 *Ērēctus in aurās levēs stat*:** The phrase *in aurās levēs* should be translated *into the light breezes*. Ovid suggests here that when the huge serpent raises its neck, it touches the upper air. Thus, it is very tall.

**20–1 *Cadmī dentibus, orbibus longīs, et tābe fūnestā venēnī necat*:** The ablatives here are all ablatives of means.

**29–30 *Vōx dīcit . . . virī tē spectābunt*:** The voice is divine and prophesies that Cadmus himself will become a snake, which is a transformation which occurs later in the epic.

**34 *Cadmus quinque virōs comitēs habet*:** The noun *comitēs* stands in apposition to the noun *virōs* and is best translated as *companions*. The five armed soldiers who remain after the battle become the founders of the noble families of Thebes and, together with Cadmus, establish the city.

**adsum, adesse, adfuī, adfutūrum:** to be at a place, be present  
**altissimus, a, um:** highest  
**armātus, a, um:** armed  
**arō, arāre, arāvī, arātum:** to plow, till  
**comes, comitis m. or f.:** companion, comrade, partner  
**consīderō, consīderāre, consīderāvī, consīderātum:** to look at closely, consider, reflect  
**corium, ī n.:** skin, hide  
**cuspidis, cuspidis f.:** a point, spear  
**dēspiciō, dēspicere, dēspexī, dēspectum:** to look down on, despise, disregard  
**dum:** (conj.) while  
**effluō, effluere, effluxī:** to flow out, run out  
**ērēctus, a, um:** raised up, erect  
**exspectō, exspectāre, exspectāvī, exspectātum:** to await, look for, expect  
**ferreus, a, um:** made of iron  
**fortis, e:** strong, powerful  
**fuga, ae f.:** flight, escape  
**fūnestus, a, um:** deadly, fatal, destructive  
**furor, furōris m.:** raging, madness, fury  
**horrendus, a, um:** dreadful, terrible, horrible  
**iam:** (adv.) now, already  
**incipiō, incipere, incēpī, inceptum:** to begin  
**ingēns, ingentis:** huge  
**inter:** (prep. + acc.) among, between  
**interea:** (adv.) meanwhile  
**īrātus, a, um:** angered, enraged  
**lambō, lambere, lambī, lambitum:** to lick, lap  
**lancea, ae f.:** lance, spear  
**lētātus, a, um:** murdered  
**levis, e:** light, swift  
**longus, a, um:** long, extended  
**manus, ūs f.:** hand, band  
**mittō, mittere, mīsī, missum:** to send  
**nemus, nemoris n.:** wood, grove  
**nexus, ūs m.:** a joint, entwining, connection

**Pallas, Palladis f.:** epithet of Athena/Minerva, the goddess of weaving, wisdom, and battles  
**pāreō, pārēre, pārui, pāritum:** to be obedient to, submit to (+ dat.)  
**parō, parāre, parāvī, parātum:** to prepare  
**pellis, pellis f.:** skin, hide  
**Phoenīcēs, um m. pl.:** Phoenicians  
**plāga, ae f.:** a blow, wound  
**pugnō, pugnāre, pugnāvī, pugnātum:** to fight  
**quid:** (interrog. adv.) why  
**quinque:** (indecl. numer.) five  
**sanguis, sanguinis m.:** blood, vigor, strength  
**sēmen, sēminis n.:** seed, child  
**sībilus, a, um:** hissing, whistling  
**spargō, spargere, sparsī, sparsum:** to sprinkle, strew, scatter  
**sparsus, a, um:** strewn, scattered  
**spectō, spectāre, spectāvī, spectātum:** to look at, observe, behold  
**squāmōsus, a, um:** scaly  
**suppōnō, suppōnere, supposuī, suppositum:** to place under, bury, sow  
**surgō, surgere, surrexī, surrectum:** to elevate, rise, arise  
**tābēs, tābis f.:** a wasting away, melting, pestilence  
**tegumen, teguminis n.:** covering  
**Thēbae, ārum f. pl.:** Thebes, a city in Boeotia  
**tīmor, tīmōris m.:** fear, dread  
**torqueō, torquēre, torsi, tortum:** to twist, turn  
**tremor, tremōris m.:** shaking, quivering, tremor  
**trūdō, trūdere, trūsī, trūsum:** to thrust, push forth  
**vestigō, vestigāre, vestigāvī, vestigātum:** to track down, trace out  
**vīpereus, a, um:** of a snake  
**volūbilis, e:** turning, spinning, whirling  
**vōx, vōcis f.:** voice

**THIRD DECLENSION ADJECTIVES****Masculine/feminine adjectives**

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<i>Nominative</i>	praesignis	praesignēs
<i>Genitive</i>	praesignis	praesignium
<i>Dative</i>	praesignī	praesignibus
<i>Accusative</i>	praesignem	praesignēs
<i>Ablative</i>	praesignī	praesignibus

**Neuter adjectives**

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<i>Nominative</i>	praesigne	praesignia
<i>Genitive</i>	praesignis	praesignium
<i>Dative</i>	praesignī	praesignibus
<i>Accusative</i>	praesigne	praesignia
<i>Ablative</i>	praesignī	praesignibus

The armed soldiers who spring from the planted teeth of the serpent are known as the *Spartoi*, which in Greek means “Sown Men,” and the five men who remain after the battle become the founders of the noble families of Thebes. Thus, the Thebans considered themselves *autochthonous*, or “sprung from the earth.” In myth, Athena gives some of the serpent’s teeth to King Aeëtes of Colchis. Later, the hero Jason fights the armed soldiers which grow from those teeth when he contends for the golden fleece.



# Taylor & Francis

Taylor & Francis Group

<http://taylorandfrancis.com>

## 9 Actaeon

(*Met.* 3.138–252)

*The grandson of Cadmus, Actaeon, accidentally sees Diana naked while he is hunting, and the angry goddess punishes him by turning him into prey for his own hounds.*

- 1 Erat mōns infectus caede ferārum variārum. Iuvenis vērator, Actaeōn nomine, cum  
2 comitibus per lustra vagābat. Actaeōn clāmat: “Līna nostra et ferrum nostrum  
3 cruōre ferārum madent. Vērātus satis fortūnae habet. Cum Aurōra sē redūcet, opus  
4 repetēmus.” Comitēs labōrem intermittunt.
- 5 Erat vallis densa piceīs et cupressū acūtā. Sacra Diānae erat. In recessū extrēmō  
6 antrum erat, labōrātum nullā arte. Ibi nātūra suō ingeniō artem simulābat. Fōns  
7 perlūcidus ā dextrā sonābat. Hic dea fessa vērātū ferārum perfundere virgineōs artūs  
8 solēbat. Nunc dea tēlum pharetramque arcumque ūnī nymphārum trādit, et alia  
9 nympa pallam habet. Duae nympae vincla pedibus dēmunt. Alia nymphārum  
10 capillōs sparsōs in nōdum colligit, quamvis capillī nympae ipsius solūtī erant.  
11 Cēterae aquam dē urnīs capācibus fundunt.
- 12 Dum Diāna sē in stāgnō solitō lavat, nepōs Cadmī per nemus ignōtum passibus nōn  
13 certīs errat, et in lūcum intrat. Simul atque antrum rōrāns fontibus intrat, nympae  
14 nūdae sua pectora percutiunt, et vīsū virī multum ululant. Clāmor antrum implet.  
15 Nympae Diānam circumfundunt, et deam corporibus suis tegunt. Dea tamen  
16 omnēs superēminet. Vultus deae vīsae sine vestamentō rubens est, ut Aurōra est  
17 purpurea in caelō.

### Commentary

**3 *Vērātus satis fortūnae habet:*** The indeclinable word *satis* often takes a partitive genitive. Translate: *enough luck*. In other words, the men have enjoyed success in their hunting.

**6–7 *Fōns perlūcidus ā dextrā sonābat:*** *ā dextrā* is best translated *on the right*.

**12–13 *nepōs Cadmī . . . passibus nōn certīs errat:*** *passibus* is an ablative of means with *errat*.

**Actaeōn, Actaeonis m.:** Actaeon, a grandson of Cadmus  
**acūtus, a, um:** sharp, pointed  
**artus, ūs m.:** joint, limb  
**caedēs, is f.:** a cutting down, a killing  
**capāx, capācis:** able to hold much material, capacious  
**certus, a, um:** determined, fixed, certain  
**circumfundō, circumfundere, circumfūdī, circumfūsum:** to pour around, surround  
**clāmōr, clāmōris m.:** a loud shouting  
**colligō, colligere, collēgī, collectum:** to gather together, collect  
**cruor, cruōris m.:** blood from a wound, gore  
**cupressus, ūs f.:** cypress tree  
**dēmō, demere, dempsī, demptum:** take away, withdraw, remove  
**Diāna, ae f.:** Diana, goddess of the hunt  
**errō, errāre, errāvī, errātum:** to wander  
**extrēmus, a, um:** extreme, last, farthest  
**fessus, a, um:** tired, exhausted  
**fortūna, ae f.:** luck, fortune  
**fundō, fundere, fūdī, fūsum:** to pour  
**ignōtus, a, um:** unknown  
**impleō, implēre, implēvī, implētum:** to fill up  
**infectus, a, um:** (inficiō) stained, dyed  
**ingenium, ī n.:** nature, genius, character  
**intermittō, intermittere, intermīsī, intermissum:** to discontinue, interrupt, suspend  
**labor, labōris m.:** work, labor  
**labōrātus, a, um:** made, manufactured  
**lavō, lavāre, lāvī, lautum:** to wash  
**līnum, ī n.:** linen, thread, hunter's net  
**lustrum, ī n.:** a den, lair, bog, woodland  
**madeō, madēre, maduī:** to be wet  
**multum:** (adv.) much, very much  
**nepōs, nepōtis m.:** grandson, descendant  
**nōdus, ī m.:** knot  
**noster, nostra, nostrum:** (poss. adj.) our  
**palla, ae f.:** long garment, cloak

**passus, ūs m.:** step, pace  
**pectus, pectoris n.:** breast, chest  
**percutiō, percutere, percussī, percussum:** to strike, beat  
**perfundō, perfundere, perfūdī, perfūsum:** to steep, pour over, fill, spread  
**perlūcidus, a, um:** shining, bright, transparent  
**picea, ae f.:** spruce-fir tree  
**quamvis:** (conj.) although  
**recessus, ūs m.:** a recess  
**redūcō, redūcere, reduxī, reductum:** to draw backwards, lead back  
**repetō, repetere, repetīvī, repetitum:** to seek again, begin again, repeat  
**rōrāns, rōrantis:** causing dew, dripping, being moist  
**rubens, rubentis:** red  
**sacer, sacra, sacrum:** sacred  
**simul atque:** (conj.) as soon as  
**simulō, simulāre, simulāvī, simulātum:** to make like  
**soleō, solēre, solitus sum:** to be accustomed  
**solūtus, a, um:** loose, loosened, unbound  
**superēmineō, superēminēre, supereminuī:** to overtop, stand above  
**trādō, trādere, trādīdī, trāditum:** to hand over  
**ululō, ululāre, ululāvī, ululātum:** to howl  
**vagō, vagāre, vagāvī, vagātum:** to wander, ramble  
**vallis (valles), vallis f.:** valley  
**varius, a, um:** diverse, manifold  
**vēnātor, vēnātoris m.:** a hunter, sportsman  
**vēnātus, ūs m.:** the chase, hunting  
**vinculum, ī n.:** bond, binding, sandal strap  
**vīsus, a, um:** seen, looked upon  
**vīsus, ūs f.:** a sight, appearance  
**virgineus, a, um:** maiden, virgin  
**vultus, ūs m.:** face, expression, appearance

- 18 Quamquam turba nympharum suarum stipat, dea in latus obliquum stat et os retrō  
 19 flectit. Tunc aquas in vultum Actaeonis iactat, et capillos iuvenis undā spargit.  
 20 Diāna dicit: “Nunc fabulam deae visae nūdae narrā, sī potes!”
- 21 Dea cornua cervi capiti Actaeonis dat, spatium collō dat, aurēs cacūminat, manūs  
 22 cum pedibus mūtāt, brachia cum crūribus mūtāt, et corpus vellere maculōsō vēlat.  
 23 Actaeōn territus fugit. Ubi vultum et cornua in undā videt, temptat dīcere: “Mē  
 24 miserum!” Cupit dīcere, sed nulla vōx est. Tantum mēns pristina manet. Quid  
 25 faciet? Repetetne domum, vel latēbit in silvīs?
- 26 Dum dubitat, canēs cervum vident. Actaeōn mūtātus fugit per loca solita, et canēs  
 27 post vestīgia currunt. Cupit clāmāre: “Sum Actaeōn; dominum vestrum  
 28 cognoscite!” Verba cupīdinī verbōrum dēsunt. Undique canēs circumstant, et rostra  
 29 in corpus mergunt. Dominum sub imāgine falsā cervi dilacerant. Īra deae  
 30 pharetrātae satiāta est.

## Commentary

**18 *dea in latus obliquum stat*:** The goddess stands in a position turned away from Actaeon to shield herself but still looks back at him.

**23 *Ubi vultum et cornua in undā videt*:** Actaeon sees his reflection in the pool of water.

**28 *Verba cupīdinī verbōrum dēsunt*:** The verb *dēesse* takes a dative of the thing failed here, which is the impulse to speak. Translate: *Words fail the desire for words*. That is, he wants to speak but cannot.

**auris, auris f.:** ear

**cacūminō, cacūmināre, cacūmināvī,**

**cacūminātum:** to make pointed, point

**canis, canis m. or f.:** dog

**cervus, ī m.:** stag

**circumstō, circumstāre, circumstetī:** to stand around, encircle

**cognoscō, cognoscere, cognōvī, cognitum:** to become acquainted with, know, recognize

**collum, ī n.:** neck

**cornū, ūs n.:** horn

**dēsum, dēesse, dēfui, dēfutūrum:** to fail, be lacking

**dīlacerō, dīlacerāre, dīlacerāvī,**

**dīlacerātum:** to tear in pieces

**dominus, ī m.:** master

**domus, ūs f.:** house, home

**dubitō, dubitāre, dubitāvī, dubitātum:** to hesitate, be doubtful

**flectō, flectere, flexī, flexum:** to bend, turn

**lateō, latēre, latuī:** to lie concealed

**latus, lateris n.:** side

**maculōsus, a, um:** spotted

**mēns, mentis f.:** mind, reason, intellect

**mergō, mergere, mersi, mersum:** to sink, plunge, immerse

**miser, misera, miserum:** poor, wretched, pitiable

**mūtātus, a, um:** changed, transformed

**obliquus, a, um:** indirect, on one side, slanting

**ōs, ōris n.:** mouth, face

**pharetrātus, a, um:** wearing a quiver

**pristinus, a, um:** former, earlier, of yesterday

**quamquam:** (conj.) although

**retrō:** (adv.) backwards

**rostrum, ī n.:** beak, snout, muzzle

**satiātus, a, um:** satisfied, sated

**stīpō, stīpāre, stīpāvī, stīpātum:** to press around, crowd

**undique:** (adv.) from everywhere

**vellus, velleris n.:** fleece, hide

**vēlō, vēlāre, vēlāvī, vēlātum:** to cover, hide

**vester, vestra, vestrum:** (poss. adj.) your

**FOURTH DECLENSION****Masculine/feminine**

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<i>Nominative</i>	arcus	arcūs
<i>Genitive</i>	arcūs	arcuum
<i>Dative</i>	arcuī	arcibus
<i>Accusative</i>	arcum	arcūs
<i>Ablative</i>	arcū	arcibus

**Neuter**

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<i>Nominative</i>	genū	genua
<i>Genitive</i>	genūs	genuum
<i>Dative</i>	genū	genibus
<i>Accusative</i>	genū	genua
<i>Ablative</i>	genū	genibus

Actaeon is ripped apart by his own hunting dogs in this story, which resembles *sparagmos*, a ritual tearing apart of flesh associated with the worship of Dionysus/Bacchus. In an Orphic myth, Actaeon's cousin Dionysus is torn apart and eaten by the Titans. Zeus later eats the child-god's heart, which has been saved by Athena from the Titans. When Zeus impregnates Semele, Dionysus is reconstituted in Semele's womb and reborn as Dionysus Zagreus. Unlike Dionysus, Actaeon is mortal and thus does not recover from his dogs' attack.



# Taylor & Francis

Taylor & Francis Group

<http://taylorandfrancis.com>

## 10 Semele

(*Met.* 3.253–315)

*When Semele, one of Cadmus' daughters, becomes pregnant by Jove, Juno disguises herself as Semele's nurse and tricks the young woman into destroying herself.*

- 1    Quandō fāma mortis Actaeōnis aurēs Iūnōnis tangēbat, uxor Iovis gaudēbat.  
2    Memoriam Eurōpae, sorōris Cadmī et amōris Iovis, in animō habēbat. Nunc fāma  
3    nova deae dolēbat. Semelē, filia Cadmī, gravida dē sēmine Iovis magnī erat.  
4    Dum linguam ad iurgium cum Iove solvit, sibi dīcit: “Quōmodo iurgia mē  
5    iuvant? Semelē poenās dabit! Fīliam Cadmī perdam, sī mē tenēre sceptrum  
6    gemmāns decet. Rēgīna caelī et coniunx et certē soror Iovis sum. At, putō, Semelē  
7    furtō contenta est, et iniūria meī thalamī brevis est. Gravida tamen est, et ego māter  
8    dē Iove esse cupiō. Ipsa māter dē rēge deōrum nōn sum! Nōn Sātūrnīa sum, nisi  
9    ista fēmina in undās Stygiās penetrābit, mersa ab Iove ipsō!”
- 10   Surgit, et sē nūbe fulvā circumfundit. Tunc venit ad tecta Semelēs. Ante nūbem  
11   removet, anum simulat. Capillōs cānōs ad tempora pōnit, et cutem rūgīs sulcat.  
12   Vōcem anīlem facit, et nunc nūtrix Semelēs est. Sermo multus est, et fēminae ad  
13   nōmen Iovis veniunt. Iūnō suspīrat et dīcit: “Multī falsī sē deōs appellant et  
14   intrāre thalamōs pudīcōs possunt. Nōn satis est habēre nōmen Iovem. Pignus  
15   postulā. Quantus Iūnōnem amat, tantus tē amāre dēbet. Omnia insignia Iovis  
16   postulā. Complexūs Iūnōnis postulā.”

### Commentary

**5 *Semelē poenās dabit:*** The idiom *poenās dare* means *to pay the penalty*.

**5–6 *sī mē tenēre ... decet:*** The impersonal verb *decet* takes an accusative-infinitive construction. Translate: *if it is fitting for me to hold ...*

**6–7 *Semelē furtō contenta est:*** The ablative is used here with *contenta* for the thing with which one is contented. Juno starts her internal dialogue by telling herself that Jupiter's affair with Semele is not that offensive, but she decides to punish the daughter of Cadmus when she considers how Semele is pregnant by Jupiter while she herself is not.

**15 *Quantus Iūnōnem amat, tantus tē amāre dēbet:*** The words *quantus* and *tantus* work together in this sentence and agree with the subject *Jupiter*. Translate: *As great as he is when he loves Juno, in such greatness he ought to love you.*

**an̄ilis, e:** like an old woman, aged  
**anus, ūs f.:** an old woman  
**at:** (conj.) but, at least, moreover  
**brevis, e:** brief  
**certē:** (adv.) certainly  
**complexus, ūs m.:** an embrace  
**coniunx, coniugis m. or f.:** spouse, wife, husband  
**contentus, a, um:** content, satisfied  
**cutis, cutis f.:** skin  
**doleō, dolēre, doluī, dolitum:** to grieve, suffer pain, cause pain (+ dat.)  
**fulvus, a, um:** yellow, golden  
**gemmāns, gemmantis:** set with jewels  
**gravidus, a, um:** heavy, laden, pregnant  
**insigne, insignis n.:** a distinguishing mark, sign  
**iste, ista, istud:** (demonst. pron.) that, those  
**Iūnō, Iūnōnis f.:** Juno, wife of Jupiter, goddess of marriage  
**iurgium, ī n.:** argument, quarrel  
**mersus, a, um:** sunk, overwhelmed  
**mors, mortis f.:** death  
**nūbes, nūbis f.:** cloud  
**nūtrix, nūtrīcis f.:** nurse  
**nisi:** (conj.) unless, if not

**penetrō, penetrāre, penetrāvī, penetrātum:**  
 to pass through, sink deep into  
**postulō, postulāre, postulāvī, postulātum:**  
 to demand, claim, request  
**pudīcus, a, um:** chaste, modest  
**putō, putāre, putāvī, putātum:** to think  
**quantus, a, um:** of what size, how great, how much  
**rēgīna, ae f.:** queen  
**rūga, ae f.:** wrinkle  
**Sātūrnīa, ae f.:** Saturnia, epithet of Juno, daughter of Saturn  
**scep̄trum, ī n.:** scepter, royal staff  
**Semele, Semeles f.:** Semele, a daughter of Cadmus  
**sermo, sermōnis m.:** talk, conversation  
**solvō, solvere, solvī, solūtum:** to loosen, dissolve, set free  
**soror, sorōris f.:** sister  
**Stygius, a, um:** Stygian, of Styx  
**sulcō, sulcāre, sulcāvī, sulcātum:** to furrow, wrinkle  
**suspīrō, suspīrāre, suspīrāvī, suspīrātum:** to take a deep breath, sigh  
**tempus, temporis n.:** temple, brow, time  
**thalamus, ī m.:** bedroom, marriage bed  
**veniō, venīre, vēnī, ventum:** to come

- 17 Iūnō tālibus verbīs animum fīliae Cadmī format. Ubi Iuppiter ad tecta Semele  
 18 venit, Semelē Iovem mūnus rogat. Deus dīcit: “Ēlige! Iūro per Stygem.” Semelē  
 19 laeta nimis gaudet et dīcit: “Quālem Sātūrnīa tē sentīre solet, ubi thalamum deae  
 20 intrās, tālem tē mihi dā!” Deus ingemit. Iūrāta revocāre nōn potest!
- 21 Iuppiter maestissimus aethera altum conscendit, et nūbēs, ventōs, fulmina, et  
 22 tonitrūs colligit. Tunc rēgiām Semelēs intrat. Corpus mortāle tolerāre vīrēs Iovis  
 23 nōn potest. Corpus Semelēs ardet! Iuppiter infantem imperfectum ab uterō mātīs  
 24 ēripit, et (sī fāma est digna) infantem in femur insuit. Deus mātēna tempora  
 25 complet, et postea Bacchus nātus est. Furtim Īnō, soror mātīs, infantem prīmīs  
 26 cūnīs ēducat, et inde nymphae Nysaeae in antrō occulunt et lacte alunt.

### Commentary

**18 *Semelē Iovem mūnus rogat*:** The verb *rogāre* takes an accusative object of the person asked and also an accusative object of the thing requested.

**19–20 *Quālem Sātūrnīa tē sentīre solet . . . tālem tē mihi dā!*:** The words *quālem* and *tālem* agree with the pronouns *tē*. Translate: *As Saturnia is accustomed to feel you . . . give me yourself in such form!*

**21 *Iuppiter maestissimus aethera altum conscendit*:** *aethera* is accusative singular.

**25–6 *Furtim Īnō . . . prīmīs cūnīs ēducat*:** The phrase *prīmīs cūnīs* means *in earliest childhood*. Here, Ovid refers to the story of Dionysus’ upbringing in Asia Minor. The god eventually returns to Thebes.

**aether, aetheris m.:** the upper air (aethera = acc. sing.)

**alō, alere, alui, altum:** to nourish, support

**Bacchus, ī m.:** Bacchus, the god of wine and intoxication

**compleō, complēre, complēvī, complētum:** to fill up, fulfill

**conscendō, conscendere, conscendi, consensum:** to mount, climb up, go up to

**cūnae, arum f. pl.:** cradle

**dignus, a, um:** worthy, deserving of (+ abl.)

**ēducō, educāre, educāvī, educātum:** to rear, bring up

**ēligō, eligere, ēlēgī, electum:** to choose, pluck out

**ēripiō, eripere, eripuī, ereptum:** to snatch away, tear out, rescue

**femur, femoris n.:** thigh

**furtim:** (adv.) secretly

**imperfectus, a, um:** unfinished, incomplete

**inde:** (adv.) from there

**infāns, infantis m. or f.:** speechless one, baby

**ingemō, ingemere, ingemuī:** to groan

**Īnō, ūs f.:** Ino, a daughter of Cadmus

**insuō, insuere, insuī, insūtum:** to sew in, sew up

**iūrātus, a, um:** sworn to

**iūrō, iūrāre, iūrāvī, iūrātum:** to swear

**lac, lactis n.:** milk

**maestissimus, a, um:** very sad, very gloomy

**māternus, a, um:** of the mother, maternal

**mortālis, e:** mortal, human

**mūnus, mūneris n.:** office, charge, favor, gift

**nātus, a, um:** born

**Nysaeus, a, um:** of Nysa, a region in Asia Minor

**occulō, occultare, occuluī, occultum:** to cover, hide

**postea:** (adv.) afterwards

**quālis, e:** of what sort, like

**revocō, revocāre, revocāvī, revocātum:** to call back, recall

**sentiō, sentīre, sensi, sensum:** to feel, experience, perceive

**Styx, Stygis f.:** Styx, a river in the Underworld

**tālis, e:** such, of such a kind

**tolerō, tolerāre, tolerāvī, tolerātum:** to endure, withstand

**tonitrus, ūs m.:** thunder

**uterus, ī m.:** belly, womb

**vīs, vis f.:** strength, power, force

**FOURTH CONJUGATION****Present**

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<i>1st person</i>	veniō	venīmus
<i>2nd person</i>	venis	venītis
<i>3rd person</i>	venit	veniunt

**Imperfect**

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<i>1st person</i>	veniēbam	veniēbāmus
<i>2nd person</i>	veniēbās	veniēbātis
<i>3rd person</i>	veniēbat	veniēbant

**Future**

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<i>1st person</i>	veniam	veniēmus
<i>2nd person</i>	veniēs	veniētis
<i>3rd person</i>	veniet	venient

In this story, Semele burns up when Jupiter has intercourse with her as he would with Juno, but the fetus she is carrying is saved from the fire. The king of the gods sews the fetus into his own thigh, where it continues to gestate. Later, Bacchus is born from his father's thigh. In another story, the king of the gods swallows his first wife, Metis, to prevent her from giving birth to a son who will challenge his power. When he swallows her, Metis is pregnant with the goddess Athena, who eventually is born out of her father's head. These two myths demonstrate how the king of the gods manages to exhibit feminine procreative power while at the same time displaying traditional characteristics of masculinity.



# Taylor & Francis

Taylor & Francis Group

<http://taylorandfrancis.com>

# 11 Tiresias

(*Met.* 3.316–38)

*Ovid tells a brief story of how Tiresias loses his sight when he offends Juno but gains the ability to see the future.*

- 1 Ubi cūnae Bacchī tūtae erant, forte Iuppiter iocōs cum Iūnōne agēbat. Rex deōrum  
2 uxōrī dīcit: “Ubi miscent, voluptās uxōrum, putō, maior quam voluptās  
3 marītōrum est.” Illa negat. Rēgīna deōrum dīcit: “Marītī maiōrem voluptātem  
4 capiunt quam uxōrēs.” Quaerere sententiam Tīresiae constituunt. “Tīresiās  
5 utrōsque amōrēs noscit,” Iuppiter dīcit. Rex deōrum fābulam narrat:
- 6 “Tīresiās ictū baculī duo corpora serpentum magnōrum coeuntium in silvā viridī  
7 violat. Mirābiliter hic corpus virīle āmittit. Tīresiās fēmina est! Septem annōs  
8 formam fēmineam habet. Octāvō annō, rursus eōsdem serpentēs videt, et dīcit:  
9 ‘Quoniam, sī vōs feriō, mūtare in formam contrāriam potest, nunc quoque vōs  
10 feriam.’ Dīcit haec verba, et anguēs percutit. Statim forma virīlis et imāgō genetīva  
11 revenit.”
- 12 Hic igitur arbiter in līte iocōsā deōrum erat. Tīresiās dicta Iovis firmat. Sātūrnīa  
13 multum dolet. Illa nōn iustē dolet, et oculōs iūdicis damnat. Pater omnipotēns  
14 Tīresiae miserescit. Cuiquam enim deō facere inritum factum alterīus nōn licet.  
15 Iuppiter prō oculīs illī scīre futūra dat. Sīc poenam honōre levat.

## Commentary

**2–3 *Ubi ... maior quam voluptās marītōrum est:*** The word *quam* follows the comparative adjective *maior* and means *than*.

**9 *Quoniam ... mūtare in formam contrāriam potest:*** *potest* is used here impersonally. Translate: *Since ... it is possible to change into the opposite form.*

**14 *Cuiquam enim deō facere inritum factum aliūs nōn licet:*** The impersonal verb *licet* takes a dative of the person given permission and an infinitive of what is granted. Translate: *Indeed it is not allowed for any god to make invalid the deed of another god.*

**15 *Iuppiter prō oculīs illī scīre futūra dat:*** The verb *dat* should be translated *grants* here, and the infinitive phrase *scīre futūra* is its object.

**āmittō, āmittere, āmīsī, amissum:** to send away, lose

**arbiter, arbitri m.:** judge

**baculus, ī m.:** staff, walking stick

**coiēns, coeuntis:** coming together, mating

**constituō, constituere, constitui,**

**constitūtum:** to cause to stand, settle, decide

**contrārius, a, um:** opposite

**damnō, damnāre, damnāvī, damnātum:** to condemn, cause loss or injury to

**dictum, ī n.:** something said

**fēmineus, a, um:** feminine, of a woman

**feriō, ferīre:** to strike, knock

**firmō, firmāre, firmāvī, firmātum:** to make firm, strengthen, prove

**futūrus, a, um:** future, yet to come

**genetivus, a, um:** innate, inborn

**hic, haec, hoc:** (demonst. pron.) this, these

**honor, honoris n.:** honor, distinction

**ictus, ūs m.:** blow, strike

**īdem, eadem, idem:** the same

**igitur:** (conj.) therefore

**ille, illa, illud:** (demonst. pron.) that, those

**inritus, a, um:** void, invalid

**iocōsus, a, um:** jocular, playful

**iocus, ī m.:** joke

**iūdex, iūdicis m.:** judge

**iustē:** (adv.) justly

**levō, levāre, levāvī, levātum:** to raise up, lift, make light, ease

**licet, licēre, licuit:** (impers. verb) it is allowed (+ inf.)

**lis, litis f.:** legal controversy, suit, quarrel, contention

**maior, ius:** greater

**marītus, ī m.:** husband

**mīrābiliter:** (adv.) miraculously, wonderfully

**miserescō, miserescere:** to pity, have compassion for (+ gen.)

**negō, negāre, negāvī, negātum:** to deny

**noscō, noscere, nōvī, nōtum:** to become acquainted with, know

**octāvus, a, um:** eighth

**omnipotēns, omnipotentis:** all powerful

**prō:** (prep. + abl.) in place of, on behalf of

**quaerō, quaerere, quaesīvī, quaesītum:** to search for, seek

**quam:** (adv.) than, as, how

**quisquam, quaequam, quidquam or**

**quicquam:** anyone, anything

**quoniam:** (conj.) since, because

**reveniō, revenīre, revēnī, reventum:** to come back, return

**rursus:** (adv.) again

**sciō, scīre, scīvī, scītum:** to know

**sententia, ae f.:** opinion, thought

**Tiresiās, ae m.:** Tiresias, a man known for wisdom

**tūtus, a, um:** safe

**uterque, utraque, utrumque:** each of two, both

**violō, violāre, violāvī, violātum:** to treat with violence, outrage, rape

**viridis, e:** green

**virilis, e:** manly, masculine

**voluptās, voluptātis f.:** pleasure, enjoyment

**DEMONSTRATIVES*****hic, haec, hoc***: this, these

	<i>Singular</i>			<i>Plural</i>		
	<i>Masculine</i>	<i>Feminine</i>	<i>Neuter</i>	<i>Masculine</i>	<i>Feminine</i>	<i>Neuter</i>
<i>Nominative</i>	hic	haec	hoc	hī	hae	haec
<i>Genitive</i>	huius	huius	huius	hōrum	hārum	hōrum
<i>Dative</i>	huic	huic	huic	hīs	hīs	hīs
<i>Accusative</i>	hunc	hanc	hoc	hōs	hās	haec
<i>Ablative</i>	hōc	hāc	hōc	hīs	hīs	hīs

***ille, illa, illud***: that, those

	<i>Singular</i>			<i>Plural</i>		
	<i>Masculine</i>	<i>Feminine</i>	<i>Neuter</i>	<i>Masculine</i>	<i>Feminine</i>	<i>Neuter</i>
<i>Nominative</i>	ille	illa	illud	illī	illae	illa
<i>Genitive</i>	illius	illius	illius	illōrum	illārum	illōrum
<i>Dative</i>	illī	illī	illī	illīs	illīs	illīs
<i>Accusative</i>	illum	illam	illud	illōs	illās	illa
<i>Ablative</i>	illō	illā	illō	illīs	illīs	illīs

***is, ea, id***: this, that (as a pronoun: he, she, it, they)

	<i>Singular</i>			<i>Plural</i>		
	<i>Masculine</i>	<i>Feminine</i>	<i>Neuter</i>	<i>Masculine</i>	<i>Feminine</i>	<i>Neuter</i>
<i>Nominative</i>	is	ea	id	eī/ī	eae	ea
<i>Genitive</i>	eius	eius	eius	eōrum	eārum	eōrum
<i>Dative</i>	eī	eī	eī	eīs	eīs	eīs
<i>Accusative</i>	eum	eam	id	eōs	eās	ea
<i>Ablative</i>	eō	eā	eō	eīs	eīs	eīs

***iste, ista, istud***: that, those

	<i>Singular</i>			<i>Plural</i>		
	<i>Masculine</i>	<i>Feminine</i>	<i>Neuter</i>	<i>Masculine</i>	<i>Feminine</i>	<i>Neuter</i>
<i>Nominative</i>	iste	ista	istud	istī	istae	ista
<i>Genitive</i>	istius	istius	istius	istōrum	istārum	istōrum
<i>Dative</i>	istī	istī	istī	istīs	istīs	istīs
<i>Accusative</i>	istum	istam	istud	istōs	istās	ista
<i>Ablative</i>	istō	istā	istō	istīs	istīs	istīs

*īdem, eadem, idem*: the same

	<i>Singular</i>			<i>Plural</i>		
	<i>Masculine</i>	<i>Feminine</i>	<i>Neuter</i>	<i>Masculine</i>	<i>Feminine</i>	<i>Neuter</i>
<i>Nominative</i>	īdem	eadem	idem	eīdem/īdem	eaedem	eadem
<i>Genitive</i>	eiusdem	eiusdem	eiusdem	eōrundem	eārundem	eōrundem
<i>Dative</i>	eīdem	eīdem	eīdem	eīsdem	eīsdem	eīsdem
<i>Accusative</i>	eundem	eandem	idem	eōsdem	eāsdem	eadem
<i>Ablative</i>	eōdem	eādem	eōdem	eīsdem	eīsdem	eīsdem

Tiresias appears in Greek literature as a figure known for his great wisdom and forethought. In Homer's *Odyssey*, Odysseus travels to the Underworld to seek Tiresias' advice. In tragedies such as Sophocles' *Antigone* and Euripides' *Bacchae*, Tiresias is a character who tries to deter the protagonists from their destructive behavior. In another Sophoclean tragedy, *Oedipus the King*, Tiresias' physical blindness draws attention to his remarkable inner vision. In that play, Oedipus ignores Tiresias' advice and ends up blinding himself upon realizing the horrible truth about his identity, highlighting the connection between vision and knowledge. The fact that Tiresias spends time both as a woman and as a man no doubt contributes to his great wisdom.

## 12 Bacchus and Pentheus

(*Met.* 3.511–733)

*Pentheus, Cadmus' grandson, refuses to recognize that Semele's son Bacchus is divine and suffers horribly for the outrage.*

- 1 Fāma Tīresiae per urbēs crēscēbat, et nōmen magnum erat. Penthēūs, nepōs Cadmī,  
2 sōlus fāmam huius spernēbat. Penthēūs, contemptor deōrum, verba praesāga  
3 rīdēbat et oculōs āmissōs senis dērīdēbat. Ille senex autem caput album mōvit et  
4 dixit: “Erit deus novus; tempus nōn procul est. Līber, fīlius Semeles, hūc veniet.  
5 Nisi illum venerābis, māter tua et sorōrēs tē dīlacerābunt et tē in mille locīs  
6 spargent. Silvās sanguine foedābis. Verba mea audīre dēbēs, et venerāre deōs  
7 dēbēs.” Nātus ab Echīone tālia verba dērīsīt, sed verba vātis vērā erant.
- 8 Mox Līber adest, et agrī ululātibus fēstīs fremunt. Turba ruit, fēminae cum virīs,  
9 nōbilēs cum vulgō; omnēs ad sacra Bacchī currunt. Penthēūs īrātus clāmāvit: “Quī  
10 furor, anguigenae, prōles Māvortia, vestrās mentēs attonuit? Puer inermis Thēbās  
11 capiet! Aerane, tūbia, fraudēs magicae, et vōcēs fēmineae vincere mīlitēs possunt?  
12 Minimē!” Penthēūs mīlitēs iūssit: “Īte, sine morā ducem turbae ululantis hūc  
13 attrahite.” Cadmus et aliī hunc verbīs corripuērunt, et inhibēre hunc frūstrā  
14 labōrāvērunt. Mīlitēs discessērunt.

### Commentary

**5 māter tua et sorōrēs tē dīlacerābunt:** Cadmus has four daughters: Agave, Ino, Autonoë, and Semele. Semele is dead at this point.

**8 Mox Līber adest, et agrī ululātibus fēstīs fremunt:** Bacchus embodies an embracing of the “other” and freedom from rules. His worship thus included running in the wild, drinking, dancing, singing, and ululating loudly.

**aes, aeris n.:** bronze, something made of  
bronze, bronze cymbal

**albus, a, um:** white

**anguigena, ae m.:** snake-born man

**attonō, attonāre, attonuī, attonitum:** to  
strike with thunder, make senseless

**attrahō, attrahere, attraxī, attractum:** to  
drag, lead

**audiō, audīre, audīvī, audītum:** to hear,  
listen to

**contemptor, contemptoris m.:** a despiser

**corripō, corripere, corripuī, correptum:**  
to seize violently, attack, blame, rebuke

**discedō, discedere, discessī, discessum:** to  
depart, go away, separate

**dux, ducis m.:** leader

**Echīōn, Echīonis m.:** Echion, one of  
the Thebans sprung from the serpent's  
teeth

**eō, īre, īvī or īī, itum:** to go

**fēstus, a, um:** having to do with a holiday or  
festival

**foedō, foedāre, foedāvī, foedātus:** to make  
foul, make filthy

**fraus, fraudis f.:** deceit, deception, fraud

**fremō, fremere, fremuī, fremitum:** to roar,  
murmur

**inermis, e:** unarmed

**inhibeō, inhibēre, inhibuī, inhibitum:** to  
hold in check, restrain

**labōrō, labōrāre, labōrāvī, labōrātum:** to  
work at

**Liber, Liberī m.:** Liber, an Italian deity  
associated with Bacchus

**magicus, a, um:** relating to magic

**Māvortius, a, um:** of Mars, having to do  
with Mars

**mīles, militis m.:** soldier

**minimē:** (adv.) not at all

**mox:** (adv.) soon

**nōbillis, e:** well-known

**Penthēūs, ī m.:** Pentheus, a grandson of  
Cadmus

**praesāgus, a, um:** foreboding, predicting

**prōles, prōlis f.:** offspring, descendants

**ruō, ruere, ruī, rutum:** to rush

**senex, senis m.:** old man

**spernō, spernere, sprēvī, sprētum:** to put  
away, reject, scorn, despise

**tībia, ae f.:** flute, pipe

**ululāns, ululantis:** producing howls, yelling  
loudly

**ululātus, ūs f.:** a howling, shrieking

**vātes, vātis m. or f.:** seer, prophet

**venerō, venerāre, venerāvī, venerātum:** to  
worship, entreat

- 15 Mīlitēs cruentātī revēnērunt. Penthēūs rogāvit: “Ubi Bacchus est?” Mīlitēs:  
 16 “Illum nōn vīdīmus. Hunc tamen, comitem eius famulumque sacrōrum, cēpimus.”  
 17 Mīlitēs nōn sentiunt, sed famulus est Līber ipse. Penthēūs hunc oculīs spectāvit, et  
 18 īra magna fuit. Dixit: “Mīlitēs, hunc rapite, corpus eius cruciāte, et in noctem  
 19 Stygiam dēmittite!” Penthēūs perstitit. Postea, dum mīlitēs instrūmenta cruciātūs  
 20 parant, famulus catēnās āmisit, iūtus ā nullō. Famulus discessit.
- 21 Nunc Penthēūs ipse ad Cithaerōnem vādit. Penthēūs famulum quaerit. Mōns  
 22 cantibus et vōce clārā Bacchārum sonābat. In monte ferē mediō campus pūrus erat,  
 23 spectābilis undique. In hōc locō Penthēūs ambulābat. In hōc locō Bacchae sacra  
 24 etiam faciēbant. Hīc māter prīma illum, cernentem sacra oculīs profānīs, vīdit.  
 25 Māter, dēmēns, clāmāvit: “Sorōrēs, maximus aper est! Errat in nostrīs agrīs. Illum  
 26 ferīre dēbeō!” Omnis turba furēns ruit, et Pentheum dīlacerant. Agāvē, māter  
 27 Pentheī, ululat et caput scindit. Agāvē dīcit: “Iō comitēs, hoc opus est victōria  
 28 nostra!” Verba Tiresiae vera sunt. Nunc populus Thēbānus sacra nova frequentat,  
 29 et semper ārās Bacchī colit.

## Commentary

**18–19 *et in noctem Stygiam dēmittite*:** Ovid uses poetic language here to tell the slaves to kill their captive, who is actually Bacchus himself.

**19–20 *Postea . . . famulus catēnās āmisit, iūtus ā nullō*:** Because Bacchus represents a freedom from societal confines, he resists being bound in chains.

**24 *Hīc māter prīma illum, cernentem sacra oculīs profānīs, vīdit*:** The word *cernentem* agrees with *illum*. Pentheus accidentally sees the secret rituals of the followers of Bacchus.

**Agāvē, Agāvēs f.:** Agave, mother of Pentheus  
**āmissus, a, um:** lost  
**aper, aprī m.:** a wild boar  
**āra, ae f.:** altar  
**Baccha, ae f.:** a Bacchante, female follower of Bacchus  
**cantus, ūs m.:** song, melody  
**catēna, ae f.:** chain, bond  
**cernēns, cernentis:** spying, looking upon  
**Cithaerōn, Cithaerōnis m.:** Cithaeron, a mountain near Thebes  
**colō, colere, coluī, cultum:** to cultivate, tend, worship, inhabit  
**cruciātus, ūs m.:** torture, torment  
**cruciō, cruciāre, cruciāvī, cruciātum:** to torture  
**cruentātus, a, um:** bloody, made bloody  
**dēmēns, dēmentis:** out of one's mind, insane  
**etiam:** (adv.) also, too  
**famulus, ī m.:** servant, attendant  
**ferē:** (adv.) almost, nearly

**frequentō, frequentāre, frequentāvī, frequentātum:** to crowd, flock to, attend  
**furēns, furentis:** raging  
**instrūmentum, ī n.:** tool, instrument  
**iō:** (interj.) the cry of the Bacchantes  
**iūtus, a, um:** helped, aided  
**locus, ī m.:** place  
**nox, noctis f.:** night  
**perstō, perstāre, perstitī, perstātum:** to stand firm  
**profānus, a, um:** not sacred, uninitiated, ordinary  
**pūrus, a, um:** pure, clean, simple, bare  
**rapiō, rapere, rapuī, raptum:** to seize, take, rape  
**sacra, sacrōrum n. pl.:** sacred rites  
**scindō, scindere, scidi, scissum:** to cut, tear asunder  
**spectābilis, e:** visible, worth looking at  
**Thebānus, a, um:** of Thebes, Theban  
**vādō, vādere:** to go, hasten

**PERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE****First conjugation**

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<i>1st person</i>	parāvī	parāvimus
<i>2nd person</i>	parāvistī	parāvistis
<i>3rd person</i>	parāvit	parāvērunt

**Second conjugation**

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<i>1st person</i>	inhibuī	inhibuimus
<i>2nd person</i>	inhibuistī	inhibuistis
<i>3rd person</i>	inhibuit	inhibuērunt

**Third conjugation**

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<i>1st person</i>	discessī	discessimus
<i>2nd person</i>	discessistī	discessistis
<i>3rd person</i>	discessit	discessērunt

**Fourth conjugation**

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<i>1st person</i>	audīvī	audīvimus
<i>2nd person</i>	audīvistī	audīvistis
<i>3rd person</i>	audīvit	audīverunt

**esse**

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<i>1st person</i>	fuī	fuimus
<i>2nd person</i>	fuistī	fuistis
<i>3rd person</i>	fuit	fuērunt

In this story, the daughters of Cadmus run freely on the mountain, playing musical instruments and ululating. Pentheus is disturbed by their behavior, which is not at all in keeping with expectations for noble women. Bacchus is a god of intoxication and madness, and he embodies a freedom from the confines of societal rules. He often is attended by women and creatures such as satyrs, whose animalistic half resonates with the wild element of the god. When filled with his essence, his followers experience *ekstasis*, which is a Greek word meaning “a standing outside of oneself.” Cult activity for Bacchus included both *sparagmos* of animals and *omophagia*, which is the consumption of raw flesh.

## 13 Mars and Venus

(*Met.* 4.167–89)

*When Venus has an affair with Mars, her husband Vulcan fashions a trap for the couple out of chains which are as fine as spiderwebs.*

- 1 Sōl prīmus adulterium Veneris et Martis vīdit. Hic deus prīmus omnia videt. Ubi  
2 Venerem cum Marte vīdit, factō indoluit. Sōl furta torī et locum furtī marītō  
3 Veneris, Vulcānō Iūnōnigenae, monstrāvit. Dixit: “Vulcāne, uxōrem tuam cum  
4 Marte vīdī. Herī, ubi utrōsque vīdī, in torō tuō multās hōrās consumpserant.” Cor  
5 Vulcānī excidit. Mēns Vulcānī excidit. Deus opus tenēbat, et quoque illud opus dē  
6 dextrā excidit.
- 7 Deus dē arte eius cōgitāvit. Extemplō catēnās ex aere, rēte, laqueum ēlīmāvit.  
8 Hae catēnae gracilēs oculōs fallere poterant. Stāmina tenuissima illud opus  
9 vincere nōn poterant, nec arānea pendentia dē summō tignō. Deus sibi dixit: “Sī  
10 Mars ad tecta et torum Veneris vēnerit, hae catēnae amantēs inlaqueābunt! Tactus  
11 levis et mōmentum parvum meās insidiās efficiēt.” Tunc catēnās lectō  
12 circumdedit et laqueum collocāvit.

### Commentary

**1–2 *Ubi Venerem cum Marte vīdit, factō indoluit*:** The verb *indolescere* takes an ablative of the thing causing pain to the subject. Translate: *He (Sōl) was pained by the deed.*

**3 *Vulcānō Iūnōnigenae*:** This is in apposition to *marītō*.

**5 *Deus opus tenēbat*:** Vulcan is a craftsman-god, so he is engaged in his work when the Sun tells him about his wife’s affair with Mars.

**8–9 *Stāmina tenuissima illud opus vincere nōn poterant . . . tignō*:** Ovid uses the verb *vincere* here to indicate that Vulcan’s artistry is more delicate than the finest woven works and even spiderwebs.

**11–12 *Tunc catēnās lectō circumdedit*:** The verb *circumdare* takes an accusative of the thing placed and a dative of the thing around which it is placed.

**adulterium, ī n.:** adultery

**arāneum, ī n.:** spiderweb

**cōgitō, cōgitāre, cōgitāvī, cōgitātum:** to think, reflect, consider

**collocō, collocāre, collocāvī, collocātum:** to place, locate

**circumdō, circumdare, circumdedī, circumdatum:** to set around, surround

**consūmō, consūmere, consumpsī, consumptum:** to consume, spend

**cor, cordis n.:** heart

**efficiō, efficere, effēcī, effectum:** to bring about, cause to happen

**ēlimō, ēlimāre, ēlimāvī, ēlimātum:** to polish, elaborate, perfect

**excidō, excidere, excidī:** to fall out, fall from, slip

**extemplō:** (adv.) immediately, straightway

**gracilis, e:** thin, delicate

**herī:** (adv.) yesterday

**indolescō, indolescere, indoluī:** to be pained, grieve

**inlaqueō, inlaqueāre, inlaqueāvī,**

**inlaqueātum:** to trap, ensnare

**insidiae, ārum f.:** ambush, treachery

**Iūnōnigena, ae m.:** son of Juno

**laqueus, ī m.:** noose, snare, trap

**lectus, ī m.:** couch, marriage bed

**Mars, Martis m.:** Mars, the god of springtime and war

**mōmentum, ī n.:** movement

**nec:** (adv.) and not

**pendēns, pendentis:** hanging

**rēte, rētis n.:** net

**stāmen, stāminis n.:** the vertical warp on a loom, woven web, wool threads

**tactus, ūs m.:** touch

**tenuissimus, a, um:** very fine, most delicate

**tignum, ī n.:** beam, ceiling beam

**torus, ī m.:** couch, bed, marriage bed

**Venus, Veneris f.:** Venus, the Roman goddess of love and sexuality

**Vulcānus, ī m.:** Vulcan, the god of craftsmen and fire

- 13 Ubi Venus et adulter Mars in ūnum torum vēnērunt, ambō multum mōvērunt.  
 14 Mōmentum laqueum effēcit, et Venus et Mārs, dēprensī arte marītī, in mediīs  
 15 amplexibus haesērunt. Extemplō Lemnius valvās eburnās patefēcit, et deōs  
 16 immīsīt. Illī ligātī turpiter iacuērunt. Aliquis dē dīs (nōn tristibus) dixit: “Optō sīc  
 17 turpis esse! Sī Venus mē ad thalamum vocāverit, illūc laetus ruam.” Superī  
 18 rīsērunt, et haec fābula nōtissima in tōtō caelō diū erat.

### Commentary

- 14 *Mōmentum laqueum effēcit:*** *Mōmentum* is the subject, and *laqueum* is the direct object.  
**14 et Venus et Mārs, dēprensī arte marītī:** The ablative of means goes with the word *dēprensī*.  
**17–18. *Superī rīsērunt, et haec fābula nōtissima in tōtō caelō diū erat:*** The word *superī* is used frequently to mean *the gods*. Ovid means that this story was very popular among the gods.

**adulter, adulterī m.:** adulterer

**ambō, ambae, ambo:** (adj. and pron.) both

**amplexus, ūs m.:** embrace

**dēpressus, a, um:** seized, caught up

**eburnus, a, um:** made of ivory

**haereō, haerēre, haesī, haesum:** to stick, get stuck

**iaceō, iacēre, iacuī, iacitum:** to lie

**illūc:** (adv.) to that place

**immittō, immittere, immīsī, immissum:** to send in

**Lemnius, ī m.:** of Lemnos, epithet of Vulcan

**ligātus, a, um:** tied up, caught up

**nōtissimus, a, um:** most known, best known

**patefaciō, patefacere, patefēcī, patefactum:** to throw open, open, reveal

**superus, a, um:** high, supreme, situated above

**tōtus, a, um:** whole

**tristis, e:** sad

**turpis, e:** ugly, foul, shameful

**turpiter:** (adv.) in shame

**PLUPERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE****All conjugations**

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<i>1st person</i>	consumpseram	consumpserāmus
<i>2nd person</i>	consumpserās	consumpserātis
<i>3rd person</i>	consumpserat	consumpserant

**esse**

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<i>1st person</i>	fueram	fuerāmus
<i>2nd person</i>	fuerās	fuerātis
<i>3rd person</i>	fuerat	fuerant

**FUTURE PERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE****All conjugations**

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<i>1st person</i>	consumpserō	consumpserimus
<i>2nd person</i>	consumpseris	consumpseritis
<i>3rd person</i>	consumpserit	consumpserint

**esse**

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<i>1st person</i>	fuerō	fuerimus
<i>2nd person</i>	fueris	fueritis
<i>3rd person</i>	fuerit	fuerint

The story of the adulterous affair of Mars and Venus first appears in Homer's *Odyssey*. There, the blind bard Demodokos entertains everyone with the story at the court of the Phaiakians, where Odysseus has washed up after years of struggling to return home from the Trojan War. Homer compares the delicate chains, which the craftsman-god Hephaestus (Vulcan's Greek counterpart) creates, to spiderwebs, a comparison which makes its way into Ovid's story. The comparison has particular significance in Homer's poem. Later, when Odysseus returns to his homeland, Homer suggests that the marriage bed of Odysseus and Penelope might be full of spiderwebs. So, Odysseus is likened to Hephaestus, and the story of Hephaestus' triumph over his wife's lover by means of his art rather than by might foreshadows Odysseus' own victory over the suitors who have been pursuing Penelope in his absence. Indeed, Odysseus and Hephaestus share the Greek epithet *polymetis*, which means "very resourceful."

## 14 Salmacis and Hermaphroditus

(*Met.* 4.274–388)

*Ovid gives an account of how the spring of Salmacis gains the power to emasculate men who bathe in its waters.*

- 1 Nāidēs puerum, nātum Mercuriō et dīvā Venere, sub antrīs Īdaeīs ēnūtrīvērunt. In  
2 faciē puerī mātrem et patrem cognoscere poterat, et puer nōmen, Hermaphroditum,  
3 ab illīs trāxit. Ubi tria quinquennia fēcit, montēs patriōs dēseruit et in locīs ignōtīs  
4 errāvit. Ad Lyciās urbēs et Cāriam vēnit. Hīc stāgnum lymphae lūcentis usque ad  
5 ĩmum solum vīdit. Salmacis, nympha, stāgnum colēbat. Nec nympha apta vēmātūi  
6 erat, nec arcum flectere solēbat. Hōc diē flōrēs legēbat ubi puerum vīdit vīsumque  
7 habēre optāvit.
- 8 Antequam puerum appellāvit, sē composuit. Amictūs circumspexit, et vultum  
9 fīnxit. Tunc dixit: “Ō dignissime puer, speciēs tua similis deō est. Sīve deus es,  
10 Cupīdō esse potes. Sīve mortālis es, frāter et pater tuus sunt beātī, et soror, mātēr,  
11 et nūtrix sunt fortunātae. Tibi nūbere cupiō.” Rubor ōra puerī notāvit. Cum nympha  
12 oscula poposcit, Hermaphroditus dixit: “Nisi dēsinēs, hunc locum et tē  
13 relinquam!” Salmacis puerō respondit: “Hunc locum tibi trādō.” Nympha discēdere  
14 simulāvit, et sē in fruticibus silvae cēlāvit.

### Commentary

1–2 *In faciē puerī mātrem et patrem cognoscere poterat*: The verb *poterat* is used impersonally here. Translate: *It was possible* ...

**amictus, ūs m.:** dress, garment

**antequam:** (conj.) before

**aptus, a, um:** fitted to, suited to (+ dat.)

**Cāria, ae f.:** Caria, a district in Asia Minor

**circumspiciō, circumspicere, circumspexī,**

**circumspectum:** to look round, survey, consider

**compōnō, compōnere, composuī,**

**compositum:** to compose, put together, arrange

**dēsīnō, dēsīnere, dēsī, dēsītum:** to cease, desist, stop

**dignissimus, a, um:** most worthy

**dīvus, a, um:** divine

**ēnūtriō, ēnūtrire, ēnūtrivī, ēnūtrītum:** to nourish, bring up

**fingō, fingere, finxī, fictum:** to shape, fashion, form

**fortūnātus, a, um:** blessed, happy

**frāter, frātris m.:** brother

**frutex, fruticis m.:** shrub, bush

**Hermaphroditus, ī m.:** Hermaphroditus, the son of Mercury and Venus

**Īdaeus, a, um:** of Mt. Ida, a mountain near Troy

**īmus, a, um:** lowest, deepest

**lūcēns, lūcentis:** shining, gleaning

**Lycius, a, um:** of Lycia, a region of Asia Minor

**lymp̄ha, ae f.:** water

**Mercurius, ī m.:** Mercury, the god of messengers, thieves, and merchants

**nūbō, nūbere, nupsī, nuptum:** to cover, veil, marry (+ dat.)

**notō, notāre, notāvī, notātum:** to mark

**poscō, poscere, poposci:** to request, ask for, demand

**quinquennium, ī n.:** a period of five years

**respondeō, respondēre, respondi,**

**responsum:** to answer to, reply

**rubor, rubōris m.:** redness

**Salmacis, Salmacidis f.:** Salmacis, a nymph in Caria

**similis, e:** like, similar to (+ dat.)

**solum, ī n.:** floor, bottom

**speciēs, speciē f.:** view, sight, appearance

**trahō, trahere, traxī, tractum:** to draw, drag, take

**usque:** (adv.) as far as, all the way to, continuously

- 15 Puer, ut inobservātus, amictum dē corpore tenerō pōnit, et multum nymphae  
 16 placuit. Salmacis cupīdine formae nūdae exarsit. Vix moram tolerat. Iam amplexūs  
 17 cupit, iam sē malē continet. Ille in laticēs dēsilit, et corpus in aquīs liquidīs  
 18 translūcet. Nympha clāmat: “Vīcī, et meus est!” Omnēs vestēs procul iactat, et sē  
 19 in aquam immergit. Nympha sē puerō circumfundit, ut serpēns. Hermaphrodītus  
 20 perstat, et gaudium spērātum nymphae dēnegat. Illa premit, et corporī puerī haeret.  
 21 Salmacis dīcit: “Improbe, nōn effugiēs! Dī, ōrō, sinite nullam diem sēparātiōnis  
 22 venīre!”
- 23 Deī vōta nymphae audīvērunt. Corpora iunxērunt, et ūnam faciem illīs dedērunt.  
 24 Membra in complexū tenācī coiērunt. Nec duo sunt, nec ūnus est. Nec fēmina est,  
 25 nec vir est. Neutrum et utrumque. Ubi membra mollia in undā videt,  
 26 Hermaphrodītus clāmat: “Mūnus nātō vestrō date, pater et māter. Sī quis in hunc  
 27 fontem vēnerit, facite virum sēmivirum!” Parentēs verba nātī biformis audīvērunt,  
 28 et fontem incestō medicāmine tinxit.

## Commentary

**16 *Salmacis cupīdine formae nūdae exarsit:*** The word *cupīdine* is an ablative of cause, explaining the reason why the nymph becomes inflamed. *formae nūdae* is an example of an objective genitive. Translate: *Salmacis burned with desire for the nude body.*

**19 *Nympha sē puerō circumfundit:*** The verb *circumfundere* takes an accusative of what is poured round and a dative of what is surrounded.

**20 *Illā premit, et corporī puerī haeret:*** The verb *haerere* takes the dative here.

**21 *Dī, ōrō:*** *Dī = Deī.*

**21–2 *sinite nullam diem sēparātiōnis venīre:*** The accusative and infinitive depend on the verb *sinere*. Translate: *allow no day of separation to come.*

**26–7 *Sī quis in hunc fontem vēnerit:*** *Sī quis = sī aliquis.* After *sī, nisi, num,* and *nē,* the first part of *aliquis, aliquid* does not appear.

**biformis, e:** of double form

**coeō, coīre, coiī, coitum:** come together,  
assemble

**contineō, continēre, continui, contentum:**  
to hold together, restrain

**dēnegō, dēnegāre, dēnegāvī, dēnegātum:** to  
deny

**dēsiliō, dēsiliŕe, dēsiluī, dēsultum:** to leap  
down

**effugiō, effugere, effūgī:** to flee

**exardescō, exardescere, exarsī, exarsum:** to  
burn, become excited

**gaudium, ī n.:** joy, gladness

**immergō, immergere, immersī,  
immersum:** to dip, plunge, immerse

**improbis, a, um:** wicked

**incestus, a, um:** impure, defiled, sinful

**inobservātus, a, um:** unseen,  
unobserved

**iungō, iungere, iunxī, iunctum:**  
to join, unite

**latex, laticis m.:** liquid, fluid

**liquidus, a, um:** liquid, fluid

**malē:** (adv.) badly

**medicāmen, medicāminis n.:** drug,  
medicine, poison

**mollis, e:** soft, tender

**neuter, neutra, neutrum:** neither

**parēs, parentis m. or f.:** parent

**placeō, placēre, placuī, placitum:** to please,  
be agreeable to (+ dat.)

**premō, premere, pressī, pressum:** to press,  
pursue closely

**sēmivir, sēmivirī m.:** a half-man, effeminate  
man

**sēparatio, sēparatiōnis f.:** severance,  
separation

**sinō, sinere, sīvī, situs:** to let alone, allow,  
permit

**spērātus, a, um:** hoped for

**tenax, tenācis:** holding fast, clinging

**tener, tenera, tenerum:** soft, delicate,  
youthful

**tingō, tingere, tinxī, tinctum:** to wet,  
moisten, dye, imbue

**translūceō, translūcēre:** to shine across,  
shine through

**vix:** (adv.) with difficulty, scarcely

**FIFTH DECLENSION**

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<i>Nominative</i>	diēs	diēs
<i>Genitive</i>	diēī	diērum
<i>Dative</i>	diēī	diēbus
<i>Accusative</i>	diem	diēs
<i>Ablative</i>	diē	diebus

In this story, Ovid offers an aetiological myth for hermaphroditism. In general, Greek and Roman society considered women to be threatening to men's masculinity. Women were thought to be cold and wet by nature and to need constant replenishment of the fluids lost through menstruation to stay healthy. One way to replenish these lost fluids was through sexual intercourse with men. Men were considered to be warm and dry by nature, and it was thought that losing too much masculine fluid through sex with women could cause men's bodies to become soft, their voices to get higher, and, overall, their strength to weaken. Here, the fountain assumes the emasculating power of the nymph herself.



# Taylor & Francis

Taylor & Francis Group

<http://taylorandfrancis.com>

## 15 The transformation of Cadmus

(*Met.* 4.563–603)

*As prophesied, after the misfortunes of his family in Thebes, Cadmus himself becomes a serpent.*

- 1 Cadmus, quī conditor Thēbānus fuerat, victus luctū fortunāque malā et territus  
2 ostentīs quae plūrima vīderat, ex urbe suā reliquit. Errōres longī Cadmum ēgunt.  
3 Denīque fuga conditōrem Thēbānum cum coniuge ad fīnēs Illyricōs agit. Hīc gravēs  
4 malīs annīsque fāta domūs retractant, et suōs labōrēs relegunt. Cadmus dīcit:  
5 “Num sacer ille serpēns, quem cuspide meā trāiēcī et cuius dentēs vīpereōs per  
6 humum sparsī, erat? Sī serpēns sacer erat, dī iniūriam tam malam vindicābant. Ipse  
7 igitur dēbeō esse serpēns, porrectus in alvum longam. Hoc dīs placēbit.”
- 8 Haec dīxit, et subitō dī senem in alvum longam porrexērunt. Cadmus serpēns erat!  
9 Squāmās dūrātās sēnsit. Guttae caeruleae corpus variāvērunt, et prōnus in pectus  
10 cecidit. Crūra sē in ūnum commīsērunt, et paulātīm in acūmen teres crēvērunt.  
11 Bracchia restābant. Bracchia quae restant tendit et cum lacrimīs dīcit: “Accēde,  
12 accēde, miserrima uxor, dum aliquid dē mē superest. Mē tange, et manum accipe,

### Commentary

**1–2 *territus ostentīs quae plūrima vīderat*:** *plūrima* agrees with *quae* but is more easily construed with the antecedent *ostentīs*. Translate: *scared by the very many portents which he had seen*.

**3–4 *gravēs malīs annīsque*:** The ablatives *malīs* and *annīs* explain the adjective *gravēs* here. Translate: *burdened with evils and the years*.

**accēdō, accēdere, accessī, accessum:** to approach, come near  
**accipiō, accipere, accēpi, acceptum:** to receive, take, hear  
**acūmen, acūminis n.:** point, sharpness, cunning  
**alvus, ī f.:** belly, womb  
**cadō, cadere, cecidī, cāsum:** to fall, sink, plunge  
**committō, committere, commīsī, commissum:** to join, combine  
**conditor, conditōris m.:** founder  
**dūrātus, a, um:** made hard, hard  
**error, erroris m.:** a wandering about, mistake  
**fātum, ī n.:** fate, destiny  
**fīnis, fīnis m. or f.:** border, limit  
**gravis, e:** heavy, burdened, weighed down  
**gutta, ae f.:** drop, spot  
**humus, ī f.:** ground  
**Illyricus, a, um:** of Illyria, a region bordering the Adriatic Sea  
**luctus, ūs m.:** lamentation, grief  
**malus, a, um:** bad, evil  
**miserrimus, a, um:** very unhappy, very miserable  
**num:** (interrog.) introduces a question expecting a negative answer

**ostentum, ī n.:** marvel, portent  
**paulātim:** (adv.) little by little, gradually  
**porrectus, a, um:** stretched out  
**porrigō, porrigere, porrexī, porrectum:** to lay low, stretch out, extend  
**prōnus, a, um:** stooped forward, leaning forward  
**quī, quae, quod:** (rel. pron.) who, which, what, that  
**relegō, relegere, relēgī, relectum:** to gather again, go over again  
**restō, restāre, restitī:** to remain, stand against, oppose (+ dat.)  
**retractō, retractāre, retractāvī, retractātum:** to undertake again, recall  
**squāma, ae f.:** scale  
**supersum, superesse, superfuī, superfutūrum:** to be above, remain  
**tam:** (adv.) so, to such degree  
**tendō, tendere, tetendī, tentum and tensum:** to stretch out, extend  
**teres, teretis:** rounded, polished, smooth  
**trāiciō, trāicere, trāiēcī, trāiectum:** to throw, pierce, penetrate  
**variō, variāre, variāvī, variātum:** to change, alter, diversify  
**vindicō, vindicāre, vindicāvī, vindicātum:** to make a claim, avenge

- 13 dum manus est, dum anguis tōtum mē nōn occupat!” Ille quidem plūra dīcere  
 14 cupiēbat, sed repente lingua in duās partēs fissa est. Quotiēscumque aliquōs  
 15 questūs ēdere parat, sī bilat. Haec vōx quam nātūra illī reliquit erat.
- 16 Coniunx feriēns pectora nūda manū exclāmat: “Ō Cadme, infēlīx, manē et formam  
 17 quam serpēns habēre dēbet exue! Cadme, quid hoc est? Ubi pedēs, ubi umerī  
 18 manūsque, ubi color et faciēs et omnia? Cūr nōn, superī, mē quoque in eandem  
 19 anguem vertitis?” Dīxerat et ille ōra uxōris lambēbat, amplexūs dabat, adsuētum  
 20 collum petēbat. Quisquis adest (comitēs aderant) vīsū territus est. Illa collum  
 21 lūbricum dracōnis cristātī permulcet, et subitō duo dracōnēs serpunt. Quī tunc in  
 22 latebrās subeunt. Nunc dracōnēs placidī meminērunt vītae quam prius habēbant,  
 23 nec hominēs fugiunt nec hominēs vulnere laedunt.

### Commentary

**21–2 Quī tunc in latebrās subeunt:** The relative pronoun *quī* introduces this sentence. Its antecedent is *dracōnēs* in the previous sentence. It is not uncommon in Latin for sentences to begin with relative pronouns which refer to nouns and pronouns appearing earlier in the text.

**22 meminērunt vītae:** Verbs of remembering and forgetting often take a genitive object.

**23 hominēs vulnere laedunt:** Take *hominēs* as the object of *laedunt*.

**adsuētus, a, um:** customary, usual,  
familiar

**color, colōris m.:** color, hue

**cūr:** (interrog. adv.) why

**cristātus, a, um:** crested, plumed

**draco, dracōnis m.:** snake

**ēdō, ēdere, ēdidī, ēditum:** to put forth, give  
out, make known

**exclamō, exclamāre, exclamāvī,**

**exclamātum:** to cry aloud, call out

**exuō, exuere, exuī, exūtum:** to take off, lay  
aside

**feriēns, ferientis:** beating, striking

**fissus, a, um:** split, divided

**infēlix, infēlicis:** unhappy

**laedō, laedere, laesī, laesum:** to strike,  
injure

**latebra, ae f.:** retreat, hiding place

**lūbricus, a, um:** slippery, smooth

**meminī, meminisse:** (defect. verb) to  
remember (+ gen.)

**permulceō, permulcēre, permulsi,**

**permulsum:** to stroke, soften

**placidus, a, um:** quiet, gentle

**plūs, plūris:** more

**prior, ius:** former, previous

**questus, ūs m.:** complaining, complaint

**quidem:** (adv.) surely, in fact, indeed

**quisquis, quaequae, quidquid:** whoever,  
whichever, whatever

**quotiescumque:** (conj.) however often

**repente:** (adv.) suddenly

**serpō, serpere, serpsi, serptum:** to crawl,  
creep

**sībilō, sībilāre, sībilāvī, sībilātum:** to hiss

**subeō, subīre, subīi or subīvī, subitum:** to  
go under, pass under

**vīta, ae f.:** life

## RELATIVE CLAUSES

Relative clauses appear with great frequency in Latin, so it is important to understand how they work. Relative clauses allow one sentence to be subordinated to another. In the sentence *Cadmus, quī conditor Thēbānus fuerat, victus luctū fortūnāque malā et territus ostentis quae plūrima viderat, ex urbe suā reliquit*, the sentence *Cadmus conditor Thēbānus fuerat* has been subordinated to and embedded within the sentence *Cadmus victus luctū fortūnāque malā et territus ostentis quae plūrima viderat ex urbe suā reliquit*. The first sentence thus becomes a relative clause within the second sentence. Relative clauses are introduced by relative pronouns, which, like any pronouns, stand for nouns. A relative pronoun takes its gender and number from its antecedent, but its grammatical function in the relative clause determines its case. In the sentence *Num sacer ille serpēs, quem cuspidē meā trāiēcī et cuius dentēs vīpereōs per humum sparsī, erat?*, the relative pronoun *quem* is masculine and singular because its antecedent is *serpēs*, and it is in the accusative case because it functions as the direct object of *trāiēcī* within the relative clause. The relative pronoun *cuius* is masculine and singular because it also refers to *serpēs*, but it is in the genitive case because it indicates possession within the relative clause. Translate: *That was not a sacred serpent **which** I pierced with my spear and **whose** snakey teeth I scattered on the ground, was it?*

### Relative pronoun

	Singular			Plural		
	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nominative	quī	quae	quod	quī	quae	quae
Genitive	cuius	cuius	cuius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
Dative	cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
Accusative	quem	quam	quod	quōs	quās	quae
Ablative	quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

The story of Cadmus turning into a snake occurs in Book 4 of Ovid's poem, but it refers back to the story about the foundation of Thebes in Book 3. There, Cadmus slays a serpent and, when instructed to do so by Minerva, sows the teeth of the serpent in the ground, from which armed men grow. In general, snakes are chthonic symbols and signify a close connection to the earth. Athens, like Thebes, had myths about its foundation which involved snakes. Cecrops, an early king of Athens, was thought to be sprung from the earth and to have a snake's form on the lower half of his body, and Erichthonius, another early figure, also was part serpent. The Athenians, like the Thebans, considered themselves to be *autochthonous*.



# Taylor & Francis

Taylor & Francis Group

<http://taylorandfrancis.com>

## 16 Perseus and Atlas

(*Met.* 4.604–62)

*When Atlas refuses to extend hospitality to Perseus, a son of Jupiter by Danaë, Perseus turns the giant into a mountain using the freshly severed head of Medusa.*

- 1 Postquam Medūsa ā Perseō, quem Danaē ā pluviō aurō concēperat, necāta erat,
- 2 spoliū monstri vīpereī ā victōre portābātur. Perseus āera tenerum ālis stridentibus
- 3 carpsit. Cum victor super harēnās Libycās pendēbat, guttae cruentae capitis
- 4 Gorgoneī cecidērunt, quās terra excēpit et in angues variōs animāvit, unde illa terra
- 5 est infesta serpentibus. Inde Perseus per immēsum spatium caelī ventīs
- 6 discordibus actus est, nunc hūc, nunc illūc, ut nūbēs aquōsae. Terrās despectat, et
- 7 tōtum orbem supervolat. Ter Arctōs gelidās, ter brachia Cancrī vīdit. Iamque diēs
- 8 cadēbat, et, veritus sē noctī crēdere, in Hesperīā, regnō Atlantis, constitit. Hīc
- 9 requiēs ā victōre petīta est.

### Commentary

**1 quem Danaē ā pluviō aurō concēperat:** In myth, when Danaë is locked away in a bronze chamber, Zeus visits and impregnates her in the form of a golden shower. Perseus is the product of the encounter.

**2–3 Perseus āera tenerum . . . carpsit:** āera is accusative singular.

**8 veritus sē noctī crēdere:** The word *veritus*, meaning *fearful*, *fearing*, takes an explanatory infinitive here. Translate: *fearing to trust himself to the night*.

**āēr, āeris m.:** air

**āla, ae f.:** wing

**animō, animāre, animāvī, animātum:** to  
endow with life

**aquōsus, a, um:** watery

**Arctos, ī f.:** the constellations known as Great  
and Little Bear, the north

**Atlās, Atlantis m.:** Atlas, the god who holds  
up the sky

**carpō, carpere, carpsī, carptum:** to pluck,  
choose, seize

**concipiō, concipere, concēpī,**  
**conceptum:** to receive, take completely,  
conceive

**crēdō, crēdere, crēdidī, crēditum:** to trust,  
believe (+ dat.)

**Danaē, ēs f.:** Danaë, daughter of Acrisius and  
mother of Perseus

**despectō, despectāre, despectāvī,**  
**despectātum:** to look down

**discors, discordis:** disagreeing, opposed,  
not harmonious

**excipiō, excipere, excēpī, exceptum:** to take  
out, except, receive

**Gorgoneus, a, um:** of a Gorgon, belonging to  
a Gorgon

**harēna, ae f.:** sand

**Hesperia, ae f.:** Hesperia, a western land

**iamque:** (adv.) now, already

**infestus, a, um:** unsafe, dangerous, infested

**Libycus, a, um:** of Libya

**Medūsa, ae f.:** Medusa, a mortal Gorgon  
whose gaze causes petrification

**necātus, a, um:** having been killed

**pendeō, pendēre, pependī:** to hang  
suspended, suspend

**Perseus, ī m.:** Perseus, a son of Jupiter

**postquam:** (conj.) after

**regnum, ī n.:** rule, kingship, kingdom

**requiēs, requiētis f.:** rest

**spolium, ī n.:** spoil, booty

**strīdēns, strīdentis:** hissing, vibrating

**super:** (prep. + acc.) over, above

**supervolō, supervolāre, supervolāvī,**  
**supervolātum:** to fly above

**ter:** (adv.) three times

**unde:** (adv.) from where

**veritus, a, um:** fearful, fearing

- 10 Hic Atlās, fīlius Īapetī, praestāns cunctīs hominibus corpore ingentī fuit. Mille  
 11 gregēs illī totidemque armenta per herbās errābant. Atlās arborem, cuius rāmī  
 12 radiantēs aurō erant et cuius pōma aurea erant, habēbat. “Hospes,” Perseus illī  
 13 dixit, “Sī glōria magnī generis tē tangit (auctor generis mihi est Iuppiter),  
 14 hospitium requiemque petō.” Sed ille memor sortis vetustae erat, quam Themis  
 15 dederat: “Tempus, Atlās, veniet quō tua arbor aurō spoliābitur, et nātus Iove hunc  
 16 titulum praedae habēbit.” Atlās territus pōmārium moenibus clauserat, et omnēs  
 17 externōs ā suīs finibus serpente vastō arcēbat. Atlās Perseō dixit: “Vāde procul!  
 18 Hospitium tibi nōn dabō!”
- 19 Perseus, irātus, Atlantī dixit: “Accipe mūnus, quoniam mea grātia parvī tibi est!”  
 20 Victor, versus retrō, faciem Medūsae porrexit. Subitō Atlās mōns factus est! Barba  
 21 et comae in silvās mūtatae sunt, et umerī manūsque iuga erant. Quod caput ante fuit,  
 22 nunc cacūmen in summō monte est. Ossa lapidēs facta sunt. Tum in immēnsū  
 23 crēvit, et caelum cum tot sīderibus in illō requiēvit.

## Commentary

**10 *praestāns cūcctīs hominibus corpore ingentī fuit*:** The ablative explains in which capacity Atlas excels.

**19 *quoniam mea grātia parvī tibi est*:** The word *parvī* is a genitive of value, indicating what something is worth. Translate: *since my favor is worth little to you*.

**22–3 *Tum in immēnsū crēvit*:** The adjective *immēnsū* is used as a substantive here.

**arceō, arcēre, arcuī, arctum:** to enclose,  
shut in, keep at a distance

**auctor, auctōris m.:** author, progenitor,  
founder

**barba, ae f.:** beard

**cacūmen, cacūminis n.:** top, point,  
summit

**claudō, claudere, clausī, clausum:** to close,  
make inaccessible

**coma, ae f.:** hair

**cunctus, a, um:** all, collectively, the whole

**externus, a, um:** foreign, strange

**genus, generis n.:** birth, origin, class, type

**glōria, ae f.:** glory, fame

**grātia, ae f.:** favor, indulgence, service

**grex, gregis m.:** herd, flock

**hospes, hospitis m.:** host, guest, stranger

**hospitium, ī n.:** hospitality

**iugum, ī n.:** yoke, team of draft animals,  
mountain ridge

**Īapetus, ī m.:** Iapetus, the father of Atlas

**memor, memoris:** mindful, remembering

**pōmārium, ī n.:** orchard, garden for fruit

**pōmum, ī n.:** fruit

**praeda, ae f.:** spoil, plunder

**praestāns, praestantis:** standing before,  
excelling (+ dat.)

**radiāns, radiantis:** shining, gleaming

**sīdus, sīderis n.:** star, constellation

**spoliō, spoliāre, spoliāvī, spoliātum:** strip,  
despoil, rob

**titulus, ī m.:** glory, title, honor

**tot:** (adv.) so many

**totidem:** (indecl. adj.) just as many

**vastus, a, um:** empty, desolate, enormous

**vetustus, a, um:** old

**PASSIVE VERB FORMS****Present indicative passive**

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<i>1st person</i>	animor	animāmur
<i>2nd person</i>	animāris	animāminī
<i>3rd person</i>	animātur	animantur

**Imperfect indicative passive**

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<i>1st person</i>	praestābar	praestābāmur
<i>2nd person</i>	praestābāris	praestābāminī
<i>3rd person</i>	praestābātur	praestābantur

**Future indicative passive**

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<i>1st person</i>	claudar	claudēmur
<i>2nd person</i>	claudēris	claudēminī
<i>3rd person</i>	claudētur	claudentur

**Perfect indicative passive**

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<i>1st person</i>	requiētus sum	requiētī sumus
<i>2nd person</i>	requiētus es	requiētī estis
<i>3rd person</i>	requiētus est	requiētī sunt

**Pluperfect indicative passive**

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<i>1st person</i>	requiēta eram	requiētae erāmus
<i>2nd person</i>	requiēta erās	requiētae erātis
<i>3rd person</i>	requiēta erat	requiētae erant

**Future perfect indicative passive**

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<i>1st person</i>	requiētum erō	requiēta erimus
<i>2nd person</i>	requiētum eris	requiēta eritis
<i>3rd person</i>	requiētum erit	requiēta erunt

In this story, Perseus turns Atlas into a mountain by holding out Medusa's severed head. The three Gorgons were called Sthenno, Euryale, and Medusa. They are often represented as hideous women with snakes for hair, large round eyes, protruding tongues, and wings. Their apotropaic, mask-like gaze has the power to turn men to stone, and thus their land features many statues of humans who made the mistake of looking at them. Medusa was the only mortal Gorgon, and, in myth, Perseus manages to avoid her lethal stare by using his shield to look at her reflection rather than directly at her. When Perseus kills Medusa, the hero Chrysaor and the winged horse Pegasus are born from her body.

# 17 Perseus and Andromeda

(*Met.* 4.663–803)

*Perseus rescues the princess Andromeda from a sea-monster and tells guests at their wedding the story of how he conquered the Gorgon and how Medusa came to have snakes in her hair.*

- 1 Ubi Perseus spolium memorābile monstrī vīpereī portābat et āera tenerum
- 2 carpēbat, populōs Aethiopicōs et arva Cēphēa conspexit. Ibi Andromeda immerita
- 3 poenās mātris, quae deōs violāverat, dabat. Perseus vincula fēminam bellam ad
- 4 cautēs dūrās religāre vīdit. Tunc bēluam magnam ex undā venīre vīdit. Fīlius Iovis
- 5 parentibus fēminae dīxit sē Andromedam servātūrum esse. Dixit: “Sī mea nūpta
- 6 erit, Andromedam ē dentibus bēluae ēripiam!” Cassiopē et Cēpheus lēgem
- 7 accipiunt, et filiō Iovis regnum dōtāle prōmittunt. Tunc Perseus bēluam necat, et
- 8 Andromedam ā vinculis liberat.
  
- 9 Cassiopē et Cēpheus gaudent, et generum salūtant. Dīcunt Perseum servātōrem
- 10 domūs esse. Prōtinus Perseus Andromedam praemium factī magnī rapit. Hymēn
- 11 Amorque taedās praecutiunt. Odōrēs ignēs satiant, sēta dē tectīs pendunt, et
- 12 ubīque lyra, tībīa, et cantus sonant. Valvae reserātae sunt, et ātria aurea patent.
- 13 Procerēs Cēphēni rēgiam intrant, et convīvium magnum est.

## Commentary

**2–3 *Ibi Andromeda immerita . . . dabat:*** Cassiopea, Andromeda’s mother, had offended the gods by boasting that she was more beautiful than the Nereids.

**Aethiopicus, a, um:** Ethiopian  
**Andromeda, ae:** Andromeda, an Ethiopian princess  
**ātrium, ī n.:** hall  
**bēlua, ae f.:** beast, monster  
**Cassiope, ēs f.:** Cassiopea, mother of Andromeda  
**cautēs, cautis f.:** crag, cliff  
**Cēphēnus, a, um:** of Cepheus, ruled by Cepheus  
**Cēphēus, a, um:** of Cepheus, a king of Ethiopia  
**Cēpheus, ī m.:** Cepheus, father of Andromeda  
**conspiciō, conspiciere, conspexī, conspectum:** to look at, observe  
**convīvium, ī n.:** banquet, feast  
**dōtālis, e:** given as part of a dowry  
**gener, generī m.:** son-in-law  
**Hymēn, Hymenis m.:** Hymen, a god of marriage  
**immeritus, a, um:** undeserving  
**lex, lēgis f.:** a law, formal agreement

**liberō, liberāre, liberāvī, liberātus:** to free  
**lyra, ae f.:** lyre  
**memorābilis, e:** memorable, remarkable  
**nūpta, ae f.:** married woman, wife  
**odor, odōris m.:** smell  
**pateō, patēre, patuī:** to lie open, be accessible  
**praecutiō, praecutere, praecussī, praecussum:** to shake in front  
**praemium, ī n.:** profit, reward  
**procer, proceris m.:** a chief, prince, noble  
**prōmittō, prōmittere, prōmīsī, prōmissum:** to promise  
**religō, religāre, religāvī, religātum:** to tie  
**reserātus, a, um:** unbarred, opened  
**salūtō, salūtāre, salūtāvī, salūtātum:** to greet, say goodbye to  
**satiō, satiāre, satiāvī, satiātum:** to satisfy, fill  
**servātor, servātōris m.:** savior  
**taeda, ae f.:** torch  
**ubique:** (adv.) everywhere  
**vinculum, ī n.:** chain, bond

14 Postquam procerēs famem epulīs et sitim mūnere Bacchī satiāvērunt, Perseus  
 15 mōrēs animumque virōrum Cēphēnōrum quaesīvit. Quī ēdocuit dixit: “Nunc, ō  
 16 fortissime, dīc fābulam Gorgonis. Quantā virtūte et quibus artibus caput Medūsae,  
 17 crīnītum dracōnibus, superāvistī?” Perseus narrāvit sē per agrōs simulācra  
 18 hominum et ferārum conversa in silicem vīdisse, et sē tamen imāginem Medūsae in  
 19 clipeō aereō adspexisse. Somnum gravem dracōnēs et ipsam tenuisse, et sē caput ē  
 20 collō ēripuisse. Tunc fīlius Iovis dīxit Pēgasum et frātre dē sanguine Gorgonis  
 21 nātōs esse.

22 Ūnus ex numerō procerum quaesīvit: “Cūr Medūsa sōla capillōs mixtōs anguibus  
 23 habet?” Hospes dīxit prīmam formam Medūsae esse clārissimam et capillōs esse  
 24 bellissimam partem tōtius corporis. “Dīcunt rēctōrem pontī hanc fēminam bellam  
 25 in templō Minervae vitiāvisse. Minerva vultum castum aegide cēlāvit, et tunc  
 26 crīnem Gorgoneum in hydrōs turpēs mūtāvit. Nunc quoque dea anguēs quōs fēcit  
 27 in aegide suā sustinet.”

## Commentary

**14 *sitim mūnere Bacchī satiāvērunt*:** *sitim* is accusative singular.

**15 *Quī ēdocuit dixit*:** The relative clause *quī ēdocuit* serves as the subject of the verb *dixit*. The person who asks Perseus to share the story about his conquest of the Gorgon is the man who answers Perseus’ questions about local customs and mentality.

**17–18 *Perseus narrāvit . . . in silicem*:** *conversa* agrees with *simulācra*.

**19–20 *Somnum gravem . . . ēripuisse*:** The indirect statement is dependent on the verb *narrāvit* in the previous sentence.

**24 *rēctōrem pontī*:** This descriptive phrase refers to Neptune, the god governing salty waters and the sea.

**adspiciō, adspicere, adspexī, adspectum:** to look at, notice

**aegis, aegidis f.:** aegis, special chest-armor embellished with a Gorgon-head

**aereus, a, um:** of bronze

**bellissimus, a, um:** most beautiful

**clārissimus, a, um:** brightest, clearest, most famous

**clipeus, ī m.:** shield

**conversus, a, um:** turned

**crīnis, crīnis m.:** hair

**crīnītus, a, um:** hairy

**ēdoceō, ēdocēre, ēdocuī, ēdoctum:** to explain, inform fully

**epulae, ārum f. pl.:** food, feast

**famēs, famis f.:** hunger

**fortissimus, a, um:** strongest, bravest

**Gorgō, Gorgonis f.:** Gorgon, a mythical monster

**hydrus, ī m.:** water-snake

**mixtus, a, um:** mixed

**mōs, mōris m.:** custom, habit

**numerus, ī m.:** a number

**Pēgasus, ī m.:** Pegasus, flying horse born from Medusa

**rēctor, rēctōris m.:** ruler

**silex, silicis m.:** stone

**sītis, sitis f.:** thirst

**somnus, ī n.:** sleep

**sustineō, sustinēre, sustenuī, sustentum:** to hold up, carry, sustain

**virtūs, virtūtis f.:** manliness, excellence, virtue

**vitiō, vitiāre, vitiāvī, vitiātum:** to injure, damage, rape

**INFINITIVES****Active**

<i>Present</i>	tenēre	to hold
<i>Perfect</i>	tenuisse	to have held
<i>Future</i>	tentūrus, a, um esse	to be about to hold

**Passive**

<i>Present</i>	tenērī	to be held
<i>Perfect</i>	tentus, a, um esse	to have been held
<i>Future</i>	tentum īrī	to be about to be held

**INDIRECT STATEMENT**

Indirect speech occurs when direct speech is reported by someone, as in the sentence *He said that the sailor was large*. The direct statement here would be *the sailor is large*, but it has been subordinated to the statement *he said*, thus turning it into indirect speech. Indirect statement occurs after verbs of speaking, thinking, perceiving, etc. and is constructed with an accusative subject plus an infinitive. In Latin, the sentence above would be *Dixit nautam ingentem esse*. Thus, the sentence *Dīcunt Perseum servātōrem domūs esse* should be translated *They say that Perseus is the savior of the household*.

The overall structure of the *Metamorphoses* is complicated, and Ovid frequently embeds stories within other stories, thus creating multiple levels of narration. Here, Ovid has embedded the story about Perseus slaying Medusa within the story of Perseus and Andromeda. In the Western tradition, the epic convention of embedded narration dates back to Homer, who has Odysseus himself narrate several books of the *Odyssey*. In a poetic performance of his own, Odysseus describes to the Phaiakians his adventures since the Trojan War. Interestingly, Odysseus has a reputation for lying and thus may not be an entirely reliable narrator of his own exploits.



# Taylor & Francis

Taylor & Francis Group

<http://taylorandfrancis.com>

## 18 The rape of Proserpina

(*Met.* 5.346–571)

*Proserpina is captured by Pluto, the god of the Underworld, and taken to his dark realm to be his wife.*

- 1    Haud procul Hennaeīs moenibus lacus aquae altae est. Silva cingēns aquās corōnat,  
2    et suīs frondibus ictūs Phoebēōs summovet. Rāmī frīgus dant, et humus ūmida  
3    flōrēs Tyriōs dat. Vēr est perpetuum. Quō in locō Prōserpina lūdēns violās aut  
4    candida līlia carpēbat. Dum studiō puellārī calathum implēns cum puellis legere  
5    multōs flōrēs certat, ā Plūtōne vīsa, amāta, et rapta est. Puella territa mātrem et  
6    comitēs, sed mātrem saepius, clāmāvit. Raptor Prōserpinae incitāns equōs currum  
7    ēgit.
- 8    Est aequor quod inclūsum cornibus angustīs coit. Hīc Cyanē erat, celeberrima inter  
9    nymphās Sīcelidēs, ā cuius nōmine stāgnum dictum est. Quae mediā alvō exstāns  
10    currum Dītis vīdit et deam agnōvit. “Nōn longius ībis! Nōn potes esse gener  
11    Cereris invītae. Dēbēs rogāre nec rapere!” Dixit, et tendēns bracchia in partēs  
12    dīversās obstitit. Haud ultrā Dīs īram tenuit equōsque terribilēs hortātus sceptrum  
13    rēgāle in īma gurgitis condidit. Tellūs icta viam in Tartara fēcit, et currum prōnum  
14    in mediō crātēre recēpit. Cyanē, maerēns deam raptam et iūra contempta suī fontis,  
15    vulnus inconsolabile in mente gessit. Lacrimīs absumpta est, et ipsa in suās aquās  
16    licuit.

### Commentary

**1 *Haud procul Hennaeīs moenibus*:** The ablative follows the adverb *procul*. Translate: *Scarcely far from Henna’s walls*.

**8 *quod inclūsum cornibus angustīs coit*:** The sea is formed by the points of land which enclose it.

**12 *equōsque terribilēs hortātus*:** The participle *hortātus* takes *equosque terribilēs* as its object.

**absūmō, absumere, absumpsī,**

**absumptum:** to reduce, consume

**aequor, aequoris n.:** flat surface, plain, sea

**agnoscō, agnoscere agnōvī, agnītum:** to recognize, know

**angustus, a, um:** narrow, confined

**aut:** (conj.) or

**calathus, ī m.:** wicker basket

**candidus, a, um:** shining, bright, white

**celeberrimus, a, um:** very famous, most celebrated

**Cerēs, Cereris f.:** Ceres, goddess of grain and agriculture

**cingō, cingere, cinxī, cinctum:** to gird, surround

**condō, condere, condidī, condītum:** to found, hide, bury

**contemnō, contemnere, contempsī,**

**contemptum:** to despise, think badly of

**corōnō, corōnāre, corōnāvī, corōnātum:** to wreath, crown

**crātēr, crātēris m.:** mixing bowl, fissure in the earth

**currus, ūs m.:** chariot

**Cyanē, ēs f.:** Cyane, a Sicilian nymph

**Dīs, Ditis m.:** Dis, another name for Pluto

**exstō, exstāre:** to stand out, show oneself

**frīgus, frīgoris n.:** cold, coolness

**gurgēs, gurgitis m.:** whirlpool, pool

**haud:** (adv.) not at all, by no means

**Hennaeus, a, um:** of Henna, a Sicilian city

**hortātus, a, um:** having urged

**īciō, īcere, īcī, ictum:** to strike, hit

**incitō, incitāre, incitāvī, incitātum:** to urge, motivate, excite

**inclūdō, inclūdere, inclūsī, inclūsum:** to close in, enclose

**inconsolābilis, e:** incurable, inconsolable

**invītus, a, um:** unwilling

**iūs, iūris n.:** right, law

**lacus, ūs m.:** hollow, lake

**lilium, ī n.:** lily

**liquescō, liquescere, licuī:** to become liquid, dissolve, melt

**longius:** (adv.) farther

**maereō, maerere:** to mourn, grieve

**perpetuus, a, um:** continuous, unending

**Phoebeus, a, um:** of Phoebus, of Apollo

**Plūto, Plūtōnis m.:** Pluto, god of the Underworld

**Prōserpina, ae f.:** Proserpina, goddess of springtime

**puellāris, e:** girlish

**raptor, raptōris m.:** robber, kidnapper, rapist

**recipiō, recipere, recēpī, receptum:** to take back, recover

**rēgālis, e:** royal

**saepius:** (adv.) more often

**Sīcelis, Sīcelidis:** of Sicily

**summoveō, summovēre, summōvī,**

**summōtum:** to move up from below, drive off, remove

**Tartara, ōrum n. pl.:** Tartarus, the infernal regions

**tellūs, tellūris f.:** earth, ground

**terreō, terrere, terruī, territum:** to terrify, alarm

**terribilis, e:** dreadful, frightful

**ultrā:** (adv.) beyond, further

**viola, ae f.:** a violet

- 17 Intereā Cerēs, petēns filiām, per multās terrās ad Cyanēn vēnit. Nympha deae  
 18 omnia quae viderat dicere nōn poterat, sed signa tamen manifesta dedit. Zōnam  
 19 Persephonēs in undīs ostendit, quam dea agnōvit. Nunc Cerēs filiam raptam esse  
 20 scīvit. Dīva capillōs inordinātōs laniāvit et pectus percussit. Arātra glaeabās  
 21 vertentia frēgit, et irāta agricolās bovēsque lētō dedit. Fertilitās terrae dēficere  
 22 incēpit. Deinde Arethūsa, nympha fontis Sicelidis, deae dixit Prōserpinam nunc  
 23 rēgīnam tyrannī infernī esse. Māter stupuit.
- 24 Mox invidiōsa ante Iovem stat. Dea dīcit: “Supplex tibi vēnī, Iuppiter. Sī nulla  
 25 grātia mātris est, fātum fīliae movēre patrem dēbet. Tua fīlia digna marītō quī eam  
 26 rapuit nōn est.” Rēx deōrum respondet: “Hoc factum nōn est iniūria, sed amor. Dīs,  
 27 frāter meus, gener nōbīs pudendus nōn erit. Sed sī illīc nullōs cibōs contigit,  
 28 Prōserpina caelum repetet.” Puella autem septem grāna pōmī pūniceī ēderat. At  
 29 Iuppiter, medius frātris sorōrisque maestae, annum volventem aequē dīvidit. Nunc  
 30 dea, nūmen commūne duōrum regnōrum, cum mātrem totidem mēnsēs, cum coniuge  
 31 totidem mēnsēs est.

### Commentary

**21 *irāta agricolās bovēsque lētō dedit*:** Translated literally, this sentence means *angry, she gave farmers and cows to ruin*. In other words, Ceres causes the earth and its creatures to become infertile.

**24–5 *Sī nulla grātia mātris est, fātum fīliae movēre patrem dēbet*:** Ceres means that if her own indignation about her daughter’s rape does not move Jupiter, his own concern should move him. Proserpina is Jupiter’s daughter by Ceres.

**25–6 *Tua fīlia digna marītō quī eam rapuit nōn est*:** Approach this sentence as if it reads *Tua fīlia nōn est digna marītō quī eam rapuit*.

**30–1 *totidem mēnsēs . . . totidem mēnsēs est*:** The accusatives indicate extent of time.

**aequē:** (adv.) equally

**arātrum, ī n.:** plow

**Arethūsa, ae f.:** Arethusa, a Sicilian nymph  
**cibus, ī m.:** food

**commūnis, e:** that which is shared, common

**contingō, contingere, contigī, contactum:** to touch, affect

**dēficiō, dēficere, dēfēcī, dēfectum:** to fail, run short, become weak

**dīversus, a, um:** separate, different, opposed

**dīvidō, dīvidere, dīvisī, dīvisum:** to divide

**ēdō, ēdere, ēdī, ēsum:** to eat

**fertilitās, fertilitātis f.:** fruitfulness, fertility

**frangō, frangere, frēgī, fractum:** to break, break into pieces

**grānum, ī n.:** grain, seed

**illic:** (adv.) there, in that place

**infernus, a, um:** lower, from below

**invidiōsus, a, um:** envious, hateful, hostile

**laniō, laniāre, laniāvī, laniātum:** to tear to pieces

**lētum, ī n.:** death, ruin

**maestus, a, um:** sad, dejected

**manifestus, a, um:** clear, visible

**ostendō, ostendere, ostendī, ostentum:** to show, hold out, display

**pudendus, a, um:** deserving of shame, shameful

**pūniceus, a, um:** red, purple

**volvō, volvere, volvī, volūtum:** to roll, twist, turn round

## PARTICIPLES

Participles are adjectives which derive from verbs, so they possess both verbal and adjectival elements. Like any adjectives, they have masculine, feminine, and neuter forms. While they function grammatically as adjectives within a sentence, their verbal essence can govern objects, introduce indirect statement, and introduce subjunctive clauses, for example. There are four participles in Latin. The present active participle is declined as a third declension adjective while the other participles are declined as first-second declension adjectives.

### Present active

	<i>Singular</i>			<i>Plural</i>		
	<i>Masculine</i>	<i>Feminine</i>	<i>Neuter</i>	<i>Masculine</i>	<i>Feminine</i>	<i>Neuter</i>
<i>Nominative</i>	obstāns	obstāns	obstāns	obstantēs	obstantēs	obstantia
<i>Genitive</i>	obstantis	obstantis	obstantis	obstantium	obstantium	obstantium
<i>Dative</i>	obstantī	obstantī	obstantī	obstantibus	obstantibus	obstantibus
<i>Accusative</i>	obstantem	obstantem	obstāns	obstantēs	obstantēs	obstantia
<i>Ablative</i>	obstantī/e	obstantī/e	obstantī/e	obstantibus	obstantibus	obstantibus

### Perfect passive

	<i>Singular</i>			<i>Plural</i>		
	<i>Masculine</i>	<i>Feminine</i>	<i>Neuter</i>	<i>Masculine</i>	<i>Feminine</i>	<i>Neuter</i>
<i>Nominative</i>	lūsus	lūsa	lūsum	lūsī	lūsae	lūsa
<i>Genitive</i>	lūsī	lūsae	lūsī	lūsōrum	lūsārum	lūsōrum
<i>Dative</i>	lūsō	lūsae	lūsō	lūsīs	lūsīs	lūsīs
<i>Accusative</i>	lūsum	lūsam	lūsum	lūsōs	lūsās	lūsa
<i>Ablative</i>	lūsō	lūsā	lūsō	lūsīs	lūsīs	lūsīs

### Future active

	<i>Singular</i>			<i>Plural</i>		
	<i>Masculine</i>	<i>Feminine</i>	<i>Neuter</i>	<i>Masculine</i>	<i>Feminine</i>	<i>Neuter</i>
<i>Nominative</i>	fractūrus	fractūra	fractūrum	fractūrī	fractūrae	fractūra
<i>Genitive</i>	fractūrī	fractūrae	fractūrī	fractūrōrum	fractūrārum	fractūrōrum
<i>Dative</i>	fractūrō	fractūrae	fractūrō	fractūrīs	fractūrīs	fractūrīs
<i>Accusative</i>	fractūrum	fractūram	fractūrum	fractūrōs	fractūrās	fractūra
<i>Ablative</i>	fractūrō	fractūrā	fractūrō	fractūrīs	fractūrīs	fractūrīs

### Future passive (gerundive)

	Singular			Plural		
	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
<i>Nominative</i>	cingendus	cingenda	cingendum	cingendī	cingendae	cingenda
<i>Genitive</i>	cingendī	cingendae	cingendī	cingendōrum	cingendārum	cingendōrum
<i>Dative</i>	cingendō	cingendae	cingendō	cingendīs	cingendīs	cingendīs
<i>Accusative</i>	cingendum	cingendam	cingendum	cingendōs	cingendās	cingenda
<i>Ablative</i>	cingendō	cingendā	cingendō	cingendīs	cingendīs	cingendīs

### Translations

<i>Present active</i>	obstāns	standing against
<i>Perfect passive</i>	lūsa	having been played
<i>Future active</i>	fractūrum	about to break
<i>Future passive (gerundive)</i>	cingendus	to be surrounded

Ovid's account of the rape of Proserpina is actually narrated by Calliope, the Muse of epic poetry, as part of a musical contest. With her excellent tale sung on behalf of the Muses, Calliope wins the competition against the Pierides, who are punished by being turned into magpies for foolishly thinking that they could sing better than the Muses. Minerva listens to the account of the contest in Book 5 and is inspired by the Muses' victory. At the beginning of the next book, the goddess of weaving turns her mind to Arachne, a famous weaver who has refused in her artistry to yield to Minerva. Minerva and Arachne then engage in their own competition. The connection between the two narratives further demonstrates the complexity of the structure of Ovid's poem.

# 19 Arachne and Minerva

(*Met.* 6.1–145)

*When Arachne does not properly acknowledge Minerva's preeminence as an artist, the goddess contends with the mortal weaver:*

- 1    Fābulā dē Prōserpinā narrātā, Minerva carmina Mūsārum probāvit. Tum sēcūm  
2    dixit: “laudāre est parum; dēbeō laudārī et nōn sinere meum nūmen spernī sine  
3    poenā.” Animum fātīs Maeoniae Arachnēs intendit, quam sibi nōn cēdere  
4    laudibus artis lānificae audīverat. Nōn solum vestēs factās, sed quoque illam  
5    labōrantem spectāre multīs iuvābat, sive rudem lānam in prīmōs orbēs glomerābat,  
6    seu opus digitīs subigēbat, seu vellera aequantia nebulās repetītaque longō tractū  
7    molliēbat, sive fūsum teretem levī pollice versābat. Omnēs Arachnēn doctam esse  
8    ā Minervā putābant, sed illa tamen negābat. Saepe Arachnē dīcēbat: “Minerva  
9    mēcūm certāre dēbet!”
- 10    Pallas anum simulat, et cānōs falsōs in tempora artūsque īnfirmōs, quōs baculō  
11    sustinet, addit. Tum puellae Maeoniae dixit: “Nōn grandior aetās omnia quae  
12    fugimus habet: ūsus ā sērīs annīs venit. Nē sperne meum consilium. Cēde deae et  
13    rogā veniam tuīs dictīs. Illa veniam tibi rogantī dabit.” Arachnē īrātā respondit:  
14    “Inops mentis et confecta longā senectā venīs! Nīmīum diū vixisse nocet! Cūr dea

## Commentary

**1 *Fābulā dē Prōserpinā ... probāvit:*** The story of Arachne and Minerva at the beginning of Book 6 of the poem follows an account of a singing contest between the Muses and the Pierides in Book 5. Calliope, the Muse of epic poetry, tells Minerva about the singing contest, in which she had sung the story of the rape of Proserpina.

**2–3 *laudāre est parum ... spernī sine poenā:*** *laudāre* is the subject of *est*, and *spernī* is a passive infinitive.

**4–5 *vestēs factās ... illam labōrantem spectāre multīs iuvābat:*** The infinitive *spectāre* is the subject of *iuvābat*. *vestēs factās* and *illam labōrantem* are objects of *spectāre*.

**5–7 *sive rudem lānam in prīmōs orbēs glomerābat ... levī pollice versābat:*** Ovid vividly describes the process of turning raw wool into thread and rolling it up on a spindle in preparation for weaving.

**11–12 *Nōn grandior aetās omnia quae fugimus habet:*** Approach this as if it reads *Nōn grandior aetās habet omnia quae fugimus*.

**14 *Nīmīum diū vixisse nocet:*** The infinitive is the subject of *nocet*.

**aetās, aetātis f.:** age, period of life

**aequō, aequāre, aequāvī, aequātum:** to equal, make equal

**Arachnē,ēs f.:** Arachne, a Maeonian weaver  
**carmen, carminis n.:** song, poem

**cēdō, cēdere, cessī, cessum:** to depart, yield (+ dat.)

**conficiō, conficere, confēcī, confectum:** to accomplish, wear out

**consilium, ī n.:** deliberation, counsel, plan, advice

**fūsus, ī m.:** spindle

**glomerō, glomerāre, glomerāvī, glomerātum:** to gather into a ball

**grandior, grandius:** bigger, greater

**īnfirmus, a, um:** feeble, weak

**inops, inopis:** lacking in (+ gen.)

**intendō, intendere, intendī, intentum:** to direct, stretch

**lāna, ae f.:** wool

**lānificus, a, um:** having to do with wool-working

**laus, laudis f.:** praise

**Maeonius, a, um:** of Maeonia, the eastern part of Lydia in Asia Minor

**molliō, mollire, mollivī, mollitum:** to soften

**Mūsa, ae f.:** a Muse

**nē:** (adv.) not

**nebula, ae f.:** cloud

**noceō, nocēre, nocuī, nocitum:** to be harmful (often with dat.)

**parum:** (adv.) too little, not enough

**pollex, pollicis m.:** thumb

**rudis, e:** unworked, crude

**saepe:** (adv.) often

**senecta, ae f.:** old age

**sērus, a, um:** late, advanced

**subigō, subigere, subēgī, subāctum:** to work up, work into a smooth thread

**tractus, ūs m.:** a pulling

**ūsus, ūs m.:** practical experience, use

**venia, ae f.:** pardon

**vīvō, vivere, vixī, victum:** to live

- 15 ipsa nōn venit? Cūr haec certāmina vītāt?” Tum Minerva dixit: “Vēnit!” Hōc  
 16 dictō formam anīlem remōvit, et suam formam vēram exhibuit. Arachnē territa nōn  
 17 est, sed tamen ērubuit.
- 18 Nāta Iovis nōn recūsāt nec ulterius monet. Sine morā tēlās in dīversīs partibus  
 19 constituunt, et geminās tēlās stāmine gracilī intendunt. Illīc purpura quae aēnum  
 20 Tyrium sēnsit textitur. Illīc etiam aurum lentum fīlīs immittitur. In tēlā vetus  
 21 argūmentum dēdūcitur. Pallas scopulum Māvortis in arce Cecropiā et lītem  
 22 antīquam dē nōmine terrae pingit. Bis sex caelestēs in sēdibus altīs augustā  
 23 gravitāte sedent. Imāgō Iovis est rēgālis. Minerva imāginī suae clipeum, hastam, et  
 24 galeam dat. Pectus aegide dēfenditur. Dea terram suā cuspide percussam ēdere  
 25 fētum cum bācīs cānentis olīvae simulat. Arachnē Eurōpam ēlūsam imāgine taurī  
 26 dēsignat. Facit Lēdam recubāre sub ālīs olōrīnīs. Addit Iovem cēlātum imāgine  
 27 satyrī Antiopam geminō fētū implentem. Illīc Neptūnum, ut torvum iuencum,  
 28 cum virgine in Aeoliā pōnit. Phoebus imāgō agrestis, imāgō accipitris, imāgō  
 29 leōnis est. Ut pastor Issēn lūdit. Ultima pars tēlae flōrēs intertextōs hederīs  
 30 nexilibus habet.
- 31 Nōn Pallas, nōn Līvor carpere illud opus poterat. Flāva dea successū doluit, et rūpit  
 32 vestēs pictās, crīmīna deōrum. Minerva radium tenēbat, et ter, quater frontem  
 33 Arachnēs percussit. Infēlīx puella nōn tolerāre poterat et guttur suum laqueō  
 34 ligāvit. Pallas pendentem levāvit et dixit: “Vīve quidem, improba, tamen pendē.”  
 35 Hīs dictīs Minerva sūcīs herbae Hecatēiae sparsit. Subitō comae medicāmine tāctae  
 36 dēflūxērunt, et nāsus et aurēs. Caput est minimum; parva quoque in tōtō corpore  
 37 est. Digtī in latere prō crūribus haerent. Venter cētera habet, dē quō tamen illa  
 38 remittit stāmen et arānea antīquās tēlās exercet.

## Commentary

**19–20 *Illīc purpura quae aēnum Tyrium sēnsit textitur*:** The imagery here is of threads being dyed purple in bronze cauldrons.

**21–2 *Pallas scopulum Māvortis in arce Cecropiā et lītem antīquam dē nōmine terrae pingit*:** Minerva depicts the battle between herself and Neptune for preeminence in the city of Athens. In the myth, Minerva gives the Athenians the olive tree while Neptune produces a salty spring for them. The Athenians choose the olive tree, and thus Athens becomes Minerva’s special city.

**22–3 *Bis sex caelestēs in sēdibus altīs augustā gravitāte sedent*:** *augustā gravitāte* is an ablative of manner. Translate: *Twelve heavenly ones sit on high seats with majestic seriousness.*

**25–9 *Arachnē Eurōpam ēlūsam imāgine taurī dēsignat . . . lūdit*:** With bold irreverence, Arachne depicts the male gods in disguise raping both goddesses and mortal women.

**31 *Nōn Pallas, nōn Līvor carpere illud opus poterat*:** The word *carpere* here means *to carp at, find a flaw with*.

**accipiter, accipitris m.:** hawk  
**aënum, ī n.:** something made of bronze,  
 bronze cauldron  
**Aeolia, ae f.:** Aeolia, a region on the north-  
 west coast of Asia Minor  
**agrestis, agrestis m.:** rural person  
**Antiope, ae f.:** Antiope, mother of Amphion  
 and Zethus  
**argūmentum, ī n.:** tale, proof  
**arx, arcis f.:** citadel, stronghold  
**augustus, a, um:** august, majestic  
**bāca, ae f.:** fruit  
**caelestis, e:** heavenly, celestial  
**cāneō, cānere, cānuī:** to be gray  
**Cecropius, a, um:** of Cecrops, a legendary  
 king of Athens  
**crīmen, crīminis n.:** accusation, crime  
**dēdūcō, dēdūcere, dēdūxī, dēdūctum:** to  
 draw out, spin  
**dēfendō, dēfendere, dēfendī, dēfensum:** to  
 defend  
**dēfluō, dēfluere, dēflūxī, dēflūxum:** to fall  
 down, drop off, disappear  
**dēsīgnō, dēsīgnāre, dēsīgnāvī, dēsīgnātum:**  
 to signify, indicate, mark out  
**ēlūdō, ēlūdere, ēlūsī, ēlūsum:** to fool  
**ērūbescō, ērūbescere, ērūbuī:** to blush,  
 grow red  
**exerceō, exercēre, exercuī, exercitum:** to  
 bother, work  
**exhibeō, exhibēre, exhibuī, exhibitum:** to  
 bring out, reveal, show  
**fētus, ūs m.:** offspring, sapling, fruit  
**filum, ī n.:** thread  
**frons, frontis f.:** forehead, brow  
**geminus, a, um:** double, twin, two  
**gravitās, gravitātis f.:** seriousness,  
 solemnity, weight  
**guttur, gutturis n.:** throat  
**hasta, ae f.:** a spear

**Hecatēius, a, um:** of Hecate, goddess of  
 witchcraft  
**hedera, ae f.:** ivy  
**intertexō, intertexere, intertexuī,**  
**intertextum:** to interweave  
**Issē, ēs f.:** Isse, a princess of Lesbos  
**iuuencus, ī m.:** young bull  
**Lēda, ae f.:** Leda, mother of Helen of Troy  
**lentus, a, um:** supple, malleable, slow  
**ligō, ligāre, ligāvī, ligātum:** to tie  
**Līvor, Līvōris f.:** Envy, the goddess of  
 jealousy  
**Māvors, Māvortis m.:** archaic name for the  
 god Mars  
**minimus, a, um:** smallest, least  
**nāsus, ī m.:** a nose  
**nexilis, e:** tied together  
**olīva, ae f.:** olive  
**olōrīnus, a, um:** belonging to a swan  
**pastor, pastōris m.:** shepherd, herdsman  
**pingō, pingere, pinxī, pictum:** to paint, depict  
**purpura, ae f.:** purple  
**quater:** (adv.) four times  
**recūsō, recūsāre, recūsāvī, recūsātum:** to  
 reject, refuse  
**remittō, remittere, remisī, remissum:** to  
 send back, let go back  
**rumpō, rumpere, rūpī, ruptum:** to break,  
 shatter, burst  
**satyrus, ī m.:** a satyr, goat-man  
**scopulus, ī m.:** boulder  
**sēdēs, sēdis f.:** seat  
**successus, ūs m.:** outcome, success  
**sūcus, ī m.:** juice  
**tēla, ae f.:** that which is woven, web, warp,  
 loom  
**texō, texere, texuī, textum:** to weave  
**torvus, a, um:** fierce  
**ulterius:** (adv.) further, for a longer time  
**venter, ventris m.:** belly

**ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE**

This construction consists of a noun or pronoun plus a participle in the ablative case. Although ablative absolutes provide relevant information about attendant circumstances, they are grammatically independent from the rest of the sentence. Any type of participle can be used in an ablative absolute. In the sentence *Fābulā dē Prōserpinā narrātā, Minerva carmina Mūsārum probāvit*, *Fābulā dē Prōserpinā narrātā* is an ablative absolute consisting of the noun *fābula* and the perfect passive participle *narrātus, a, um*. The sentence should be translated *With the story about Proserpina having been narrated, Minerva approved the songs of the Muses*. In the sentence *Mūsā fābulam narrante, Minerva carmina probāvit*, *Mūsā fābulam narrante* is an ablative absolute which uses a present active participle. The sentence should be translated *With the Muse narrating the story, Minerva approved the songs*. In the sentence *Mūsā fābulam narrātūrā, Minerva carmina probāvit*, *Mūsā fābulam narrātūrā* is an ablative absolute which uses a future active participle. The sentence should be translated *With the Muse about to narrate the story, Minerva approved the songs*.

In the ancient epic tradition, poetry and weaving are seen as parallel activities. While men weave words and thoughts together to express themselves verbally, epic women tend to express themselves visually by weaving textiles. In this story, Minerva depicts herself and the other gods as she wants to be seen, but Arachne's tapestry shows the gods as they actually behave. Some scholars think that Ovid identifies with Arachne and that her woven tapestry stands for the *Metamorphoses* itself. Indeed, there are some striking similarities between the images on Arachne's tapestry and Ovid's narration of the same stories in the poem proper.



# Taylor & Francis

Taylor & Francis Group

<http://taylorandfrancis.com>

## 20 Niobe

(*Met.* 6.146–312)

*The Theban queen Niobe offends the goddess Latona and loses everything because of her hubristic attitude.*

- 1 Lȳdia tōta fremit, et rūmor de certāmine Arachnēs per oppida Phrygiae it. Niobē  
2 Arachnēn cognōverat, nec tamen poenā Arachnēs admonita est. Multa animōs  
3 rēgīnae dabant, sed enim nihil illī placuit ut sua prōgeniēs.
- 4 Nunc Mantō, filia Tiresiae, praescia ventūrōrum, per mediās viās Thēbārum  
5 currēbat et clāmābat: “Ismēnides, īte et date Lātōnae tūra cum precibus, et innectite  
6 crīnem laurō. Lātōna ōre meō vōs iubet.” Omnēs pārent, et omnēs Thēbāidēs sua  
7 tempora iussīs frondibus ōrnant tūraque et precēs in sanctis flammīs dant.
- 8 Ecce Niobē venit cum turbā comitum, spectābilis vestibus Phrygiīs intextō aurō et  
9 formōsa—quantum īra sinit. Niobē superba dīcit: “Quī furor est praepōnere  
10 auditōs caelestēs vīsīs? Aut cūr Lātōna per ārās colitur; cūr meum nūmen sine tūre  
11 est? Tantalus est auctor, cui sōlī tangere mensās superōrum licuit. Mea māter est  
12 soror Plēiadum. Atlās quī aetherium axem fert avus est. Iuppiter est alter avus.  
13 Domina rēgiae Cadmī sum. Faciēs mea est digna deā. Habeō septem nātās et  
14 totidem iuvenēs, et mox generōs nurūsque! Lātōna solum est parēns duōrum. Sum  
15 fēlix (quis enim potest negāre hoc?) fēlixque manēbō (quis hoc quoque dubitāre  
16 potest?). Laurum capillīs dēpōnite. Mē, nōn Lātōnam, colite. Ego vōbīs colenda  
17 sum!” Thēbāides laurōs dēpōnunt et sacra infecta relinquunt, sed Lātōnam tacitō  
18 murmure adhūc colunt.

### Commentary

**4 *praescia ventūrōrum*:** The future participle *ventūrōrum* is used as a substantive in the neuter plural. The word *praescius*, *a*, *um* takes a genitive of what is known.

**6 *Lātōna ōre meō vōs iubet*:** *ōre meō* is an ablative of means.

**9–10 *Quis furor est praepōnere auditōs caelestēs vīsīs*:** The verb *praepōnere* takes an accusative object of what is preferred and a dative of what that object is preferred to. There is an understood *caelestīs* with the participle *vīsīs*.

**16–17 *Ego vōbīs colenda sum*:** A passive periphrastic construction consists of a future passive participle (gerundive) used with a form of the verb *esse*. It conveys an idea of necessity and takes a dative of agent rather than an ablative of agent. Translate: *I ought to be worshipped by you*.

**admoneō, admonēre, admonuī, admoni-**  
**tum:** to warn  
**aetherius, a, um:** heavenly  
**avus, ī m.:** grandfather  
**axis, axis m.:** axle, axis  
**dēpōnō, dēpōnere, dēposuī, dēpositum:** to  
 put down  
**domina, ae f.:** royal lady, wife  
**ecce:** (interj.) behold! look!  
**fēlix, fēlicis:** fortunate, happy  
**formōsus, a, um:** beautiful  
**infectus, a, um:** (infaciō) undone,  
 unfinished  
**innectō, innectere, innexuī, innexum:** to  
 entwine  
**intexō, intexere, intexuī, intextum:**  
 to weave in  
**Ismēnis, Ismēnidis f.:** a Theban woman  
**Lātōna, ae f.:** Latona, mother of Apollo and  
 Diana  
**laurus, ī f.:** the laurel tree, laurels  
**Lȳdia, ae f.:** Lydia, a region of Asia Minor  
**Mantō, Mantūs f.:** Manto, a Theban  
 prophetess

**mensa, ae f.:** table  
**murmur, murmuris n.:** murmur, rumbling  
**Niobē, ēs f.:** Niobe, a queen of Thebes born in  
 Lydia  
**nurus, ūs f.:** daughter-in-law  
**oppidum, ī n.:** town  
**ōrnō, ōrnāre, ōrnāvī, ōrnātum:** to decorate  
**Phrygia, ae f.:** Phrygia, a region of Asia  
 Minor  
**Phrygius, a, um:** of Phrygia  
**Plēias, Plēiadis f.:** one of the Pleiades  
**praepōnō, praepōnere, praeposuī,**  
**praepositum:** to put before  
**praescius, a, um:** having foreknowledge,  
 prescient  
**prex, precis f.:** prayer, plea  
**prōgeniēs, eī f.:** offspring  
**rūmor, rūmōris m.:** a rumor, report  
**sanctus, a, um:** holy, sacred  
**superbus, a, um:** arrogant  
**tacitus, a, um:** silent  
**Tantalus, ī:** Tantalus, a king of Lydia  
**Thēbāis, Thēbāidis f.:** a Theban woman  
**tūs, tūris n.:** frankincense

- 19 Dea Lātōna indignāns est, et filiō et filiae dīcit: “Ego rēgīnam Thēbārum nōn  
 20 crēdere mē esse deam sentiō. Dīcit mē esse orbam: verba eius in ipsam reccidant.”  
 21 Phoebus dīcit: “Rēgīna superba orba sit!” Apollō et Diāna volant per nūbēs,  
 22 et Thēbānam arcem contingunt. Ibi septem filiī rēgīnae Thēbārum in equōs  
 23 conscendunt, et premunt terga rubentia Tyriō sūcō. Iuvenēs habēnās gravēs aurō  
 24 regunt. Ē quibus Ismēnus quī prīmus filius mātī fuerat suum currum in certum  
 25 orbem flectit, et conclāmat. Tēlum fixum in mediō pectore gerit, et frēnīs remissīs  
 26 paulātim in latus ā dextrō armō equī dēfluit. Tum Apollō cēterōs filiōs necāvit.
- 27 Niobē corporibus gelidīs incumbit, et oscula per omnēs nātōs dispēnsat. Tollēns  
 28 bracchia ad caelum dīcit: “Crūdēlis Lātōna, per fūnera septem filiōrum efferor:  
 29 exsultā victrixque inimīca triumphā! Cūr autem victrix? Post tot fūnera quoque  
 30 vincō. Septem filiās adhūc habēō!” Dīxerat, et nervus ab arcū sonuit, quī omnēs  
 31 praeter Niobēn terruit. Illa audāx erat; illa erat stulta. Deinde cūnctae sorōres ā fīliō  
 32 Lātōnae subitō necātae sunt.
- 33 Tum Niobē orba residet inter exanimēs nātōs nātāsque, et dērigēscit. Aura nullōs  
 34 capillōs movet, in vultū color est sine sanguine, lūmina stant immōta. Nihil est  
 35 vīvum in imāgine. Lingua ipsa interius cum dūrō palātō congelat, et vēnae  
 36 dēsistunt posse movērī. Intrā viscera quoque saxum est. Flet tamen, et circumdata  
 37 turbine in patriam rapta est. Ibi fīxa in cacūmine montis flet, et etiam nunc marmor  
 38 lacrimās mānat. Hūmānī cum dīs nē certent!

## Commentary

**20 *verba eius in ipsam reccidant*:** *ipsam* refers to Niobe. Latona will punish Niobe according to how Niobe has verbally insulted the goddess.

**23 *premunt terga rubentia Tyriō sūcō*:** The ablatives *Tyriō sūcō* are ablatives of means which explain *rubentia*.

**25–6 *frēnīs remissīs paulātim in latus ā dextrō armō equī dēfluit*:** *frēnīs remissīs* is an ablative absolute. When hit with Apollo’s arrow, the youth drops the reins and slowly slides down the horse.

**29 *Cūr autem victrix?*:** Niobe questions what she herself has just said, thus revealing that she does not yet believe that Latona has won. Foolishly, she goes on to point out how she still surpasses the goddess.

**33–4 *Aura nullōs capillōs movet . . . lūmina stant immōta*:** Ovid describes Niobe’s transformation into a statue. *lūmina* means *eyes* here.

**36–7 *et circumdata turbine in patriam rapta est*:** A whirlwind scoops up the petrified Niobe and carries her back to her own country.

**armus, ī m.:** shoulder  
**audāx, audācis:** bold  
**conclāmō, conclāmāre, conclāmāvī,**  
**conclāmātum:** to cry out loudly  
**congelō, congelāre, congelāvī, congelātum:**  
 to freeze thoroughly  
**crūdēlis, e:** cruel  
**dērigescō, dērigescere, dēriguī:** to stiffen  
**dēsistō, dēsistere, dēstitī, dēstitum:** to cease  
**dispēnsō, dispēnsāre, dispēnsāvī,**  
**dispēnsātum:** to distribute  
**efferō, efferre, extulī, elātum:** to carry off,  
 carry away, bury, destroy  
**exanimis, e:** lifeless  
**exultō, exultāre, exultāvī, exultātum:** to  
 jump up, leap up, exult  
**frēnum, ī n.:** bridle, reins  
**fūnus, fūneris n.:** funeral, burial  
**immōtus, a, um:** unmoved  
**incumbō, incumbere, incubuī, incubitum:**  
 to lie down on, lean on  
**indignāns, indignantis:** offended, impatient  
**inimīcus, a, um:** hostile, unkind  
**interius:** (adv.) inside

**intrā:** (prep. + acc.) inside, within  
**Ismēnus, ī m.:** Ismenus, one of Niobe's sons  
**mānō, mānāre, mānāvī, mānātum:** to pour,  
 shed  
**nervus, ī m.:** sinew, bowstring  
**orbus, a, um:** orphaned, childless  
**palātum, ī n.:** palate, roof of mouth  
**patria, ae f.:** fatherland, native country  
**praeter:** (prep.+ acc.) besides, except  
**recidō, recidere, reccidī, recāsūrum:** to fall  
 back  
**regō, regere, rexī, rēctum:** to rule, control  
**resideō, residēre, resēdī, resessum:** to sit  
 back  
**tollō, tollere, sustulī, sublatum:** to raise,  
 lift up, remove, destroy  
**triumphō, triumphāre, triumphāvī,**  
**triumphātum:** to celebrate a triumph,  
 gain victory  
**turbō, turbinis m.:** whirlwind  
**vēna, ae f.:** blood vessel, vein  
**victrix, victricis f.:** female victor  
**viscera, viscerum n. pl.:** the flesh, inner  
 organs, entrails

## PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

The present subjunctive is formed by a vowel change in the present system forms. First conjugation uses “ē” for the present subjunctive; second conjugation uses “eā;” third conjugation uses “ā;” third -*io* and fourth conjugations use “iā.” The present subjunctive of *mānō*, *mānāre*, *mānāvī*, *mānātum* is shown in the tables.

### Active

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<i>1st person</i>	mānem	mānēmus
<i>2nd person</i>	mānēs	mānētis
<i>3rd person</i>	mānet	mānent

### Passive

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<i>1st person</i>	māner	mānēmur
<i>2nd person</i>	mānēris	mānēmini
<i>3rd person</i>	mānētur	mānentur

### Present subjunctive of *sum*, *esse*, *fuī*, *futūrum*

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<i>1st person</i>	sim	sīmus
<i>2nd person</i>	sīs	sītis
<i>3rd person</i>	sit	sint

## JUSSIVE SUBJUNCTIVE

The subjunctive mood is used in many constructions in Latin, and it is necessary to know how it is being used in order to translate it correctly. There are both independent and dependent uses of the subjunctive. The jussive subjunctive is an independent use of the subjunctive mood which conveys a mild or indirect sense of command. It is translated with the word “let” or “may” before the verb. For example, the sentence *Verba eius in ipsam reccidant* should be translated *Let her words fall back onto her*.

The story of Niobe directly follows the story of Arachne's weaving contest with Minerva in Book 6, and both stories involve humans who challenge goddesses. In general, the *Metamorphoses* includes many stories in which humans are punished for attempting to step into divine roles. At the very end of the poem, Ovid offers an account of the apotheosis of Julius Caesar in which Caesar's soul is taken by Venus up to the stars. It is interesting to consider how Ovid's audience might interpret his account of Caesar's divine transformation after so many stories in which humans suffer miserable fates for trying to rival gods.

## 21 Tereus, Procne, and Philomela

(*Met.* 6.401–674)

*The Thracian king Tereus is overcome with desire when he sees his sister-in-law for the first time and is driven by lust to rape and mutilate her.*

- 1 Pandīōn, rēx Athēnaeus, Thrēicium Tēreum sibi cōnūbiō Procnēs iunxit. Nōn Iūnō,  
2 nōn Hymenaeus aderat. Eumenidēs facēs raptās dē fūnere tenuērunt et torum  
3 strāvērunt. Būbō tectō incubuit thalamīque in culmine sēdit. Procnē Tēreusque hāc  
4 ave coniunctī sunt, et parentēs hāc ave factī sunt.
- 5 Post quinque autumnōs, Procnē cum blanditiā virō dīcit: “Cupiō vīsītāre meam  
6 sorōrem, Philomēlam. Sī ulla grātia mea est, mitte mē Athēnās vel hūc Philomēlam  
7 invītā.” Tēreus carīnās in freta dēdūcī iubet, et vėlō rēmigiōque portum Cecropium  
8 intrat. Dexteram socerō dat, et Tēreus coepit referre mandāta coniugis. Ecce  
9 Philomēla dīves parātū venit, dīvitior formā. Conspectā virgine Tēreus subitō  
10 exardet nōn secus quam sī quis suppōnit ignem aristīs cānīs. Faciēs quidem digna,  
11 sed etiam innāta libīdō rēgem exstimulat.
- 12 Impetus illī erat vel corrumpere nūtrīcem vel sollicitāre Philomēlam ipsam  
13 mūneribus datīs vel rapere et dēfendere raptam bellō. Nihil est quod nōn audēbit.  
14 Iam Tēreus morās malē ferēbat, et amor fācundum faciēbat. Philomēla, quae  
15 multum vidēre sorōrem cupiēbat, rogābat patrem suum sinere sē cum Tēreō  
16 nāvīgāre. Tēreus spectābat eam quae dīcēbat blanda et circumdābat brachia in  
17 collō patris, et rēx Thrāciae cupiēbat eadem blanda et brachia. Pandīōn timēbat ut  
18 Philomēla tūta esset, sed precēs rēgis et filiae patrem vīcērunt. Philomēla gaudēbat.

### Commentary

**1 Pandīōn . . . sibi cōnūbiō Procnēs iunxit:** cōnūbiō is an ablative of means and governs the genitive Procnēs.

**7–8 et vėlō rēmigiōque portum Cecropium intrat:** vėlō and rēmigiō are ablatives of means.

**9 dīves parātū venit, dīvitior formā:** The ablatives are ablatives of specification with dīves and dīvitior. Translate: *rich in her apparel, richer in beauty.*

**9–10 Tēreus subitō exardet nōn secus quam sī quis suppōnit ignem aristīs cānīs:** Ovid uses the imagery of someone setting fire to dried ears of grain to illustrate how inflamed with lust Tereus becomes. Ovid uses similar imagery to describe Apollo’s desire in the story of Apollo and Daphne.

**arista, ae f.:** stalk of grain  
**Athēnae, ārum f. pl.:** Athens  
**Athēnaeus, a, um:** of Athens  
**audeō, audēre, ausus sum:** to dare  
**avis, avis f.:** bird, omen  
**blanditia, ae f.:** gentleness, coaxing, flattery  
**blandus, a, um:** flattering, coaxing  
**būbō, būbōnis m.:** owl  
**carīna, ae f.:** keel, ship  
**coepiō, coepere, coepī, coeptum:** to begin, commence  
**coniungō, coniungere, coniunxī, coniunctum:** to join together, marry  
**corrumpō, corrumpere, corrūpī, corruptum:** to corrupt, destroy, spoil  
**culmen, culminis n.:** summit, rooftop  
**dīves, dīvitis:** rich  
**dīvitior, ius:** richer  
**Eumenidēs, um f. pl.:** Furies, goddesses of vengeance  
**exstimulō, exstimulāre, exstimulāvī, exstimulātum:** to spur on  
**fācundus, a, um:** eloquent  
**fretum, ī n.:** strait  
**Hymenaeus, ī m.:** Hymenaeus, a god of marriage  
**impetus, ūs m.:** impulse

**innātus, a, um:** inborn  
**invītō, invītāre, invītāvī, invītātum:** to invite  
**libīdō, libīdinis f.:** lust  
**mandātum, ī n.:** instruction, demand  
**Pandīon, Pandīonis m.:** Pandion, father of Procne and Philomela  
**parātus, ūs m.:** preparation, apparel  
**Philomēla, ae f.:** Philomela, daughter of Pandion  
**portus, ūs m.:** port  
**Procne, ēs f.:** Procne, daughter of Pandion  
**referō, referre, rettulī, relātum:** to bring back, carry back, return, report  
**rēmīgium, ī n.:** rowing, the oars, oarsmen  
**secus:** (adv.) otherwise  
**socer, socerī m.:** father-in-law  
**sollicitō, sollicitāre, sollicitāvī, sollicitātum:** to move violently, incite, seek to obtain by bribery  
**sternō, sternere, strāvī, strātum:** to spread, make (a bed)  
**Tēreus, ī m.:** Tereus, husband of Procne  
**Thrācia, ae f.:** Thrace  
**Thrēicius, a, um:** of Thrace, a region north of Greece  
**ullus, a, um:** any, anyone  
**vīsītō, vīsītāre, vīsītāvī, vīsītātum:** to see, visit

- 19 Ut semel Philomēla in carīnā pictā posita est, Tēreus exclāmat: “Vīcī!” Iter factum  
 20 est, et carīna in portum Thrēiciū nāvigat. Rēx Philomēlam in stabulum in silvīs  
 21 trahit. Tēreus Philomēlam, timentem nē quid malum accidat, spectat, et puellae  
 22 territae dīcit: “Tē rapiam!” Tum malus rēx Philomēlam, clāmantem parentem,  
 23 sorōrem, et dīvōs, rapit. Ubi mēns redit, Philomēla laniat capillōs et clāmat: “Ō  
 24 barbāre, crūdēlis! Nec mandāta parentis cum lacrimīs piīs nec cūra sorōris nec mea  
 25 virginitās nec coniugiālia iūra tē mōvent? Pudōre prōiecto omnibus tē rapuisse mē  
 26 dīcam!” Tālibus verbīs ira et nōn minus hāc metus tyrannī crēscit. Tēreus metuit nē  
 27 Procnē sē Philomēlam rapuisse cognoscat. Ensem ā vāgīnā liberat. Philomēla  
 28 iugulum parat, sed rēx malus linguam forcipe comprehendit et ense abstulit. Rādix  
 29 micat, et ipsa lingua in terrā tremēns iacet.
- 30 Sōl bis sex signa annō actō lustrāverat: quid Philomēla faciet? Custōdia fugam  
 31 claudit, et moenia stabulī solidō saxō rigent. Ōs mūtum indice factī caret. Ingenium  
 32 dōloris est grande, et sollertia in miserīs rēbus venit. Stāmen dē barbaricā tēlā  
 33 suspendit, purpureāsque notās filīs albīs intexit, indicium sceleris. Perfectum  
 34 servae trādidit, et gestū eam ferre ad Procnē iūssit. Serva ad Procnē pertulit.  
 35 Mātrōna ēvolvit vestēs, fātum miserābile suae germānae lēgit, et siluit. Illā nocte  
 36 Procnē ad stabulum vēnit, portās refrēgit, et germānam liberāvit.
- 37 Dum Procnē irā ardet, Itys, filius suus, ad mātrem venit. Vidēns puerum Procnē  
 38 putat lētum Ityos pūnītūrum esse Tēreum. Procnē Ityn trahit, et ense puerum,  
 39 clāmantem et tendentem manūs, ferit. Sorōrēs dīlant membra. Inde pars in aēnīs  
 40 cavīs exsultat, pars in veribus strīdit. Itys est nunc cibus, et Tēreus sua vīscera  
 41 edit. Tum sorōres tyrannō facinus patefaciunt. Flēns Thrācius necāre fēminās  
 42 temptat. Currentēs sorōres videntur pendere pennīs; sunt avēs! Tēreus vēlōx in  
 43 volucrem vertitur; est epops!

## Commentary

**19 Ut semel Philomēla in carīnā pictā posita est:** *Ut semel* means *as soon as*.

**26 ira et nōn minus hāc metus tyrannī crēscit:** *hāc* is an ablative of comparison and refers to *ira*. Translate: *anger and, not less than this, fear . . .*

**30 Sōl bis sex signa annō actō lustrāverat:** Ovid refers to the zodiac signs appearing through the year to indicate that a year has gone by. *annō actō* is an ablative absolute.

**38–9 Procnē Ityn trahit . . . ferit:** *Ityn* is accusative singular. Note that Procne’s anger drives her to mutilate her son as Tereus had mutilated her sister, something which Ovid emphasizes by having both Philomela and Itys call out to a parent as they are attacked.

**accidō, accidere, accidī:** to fall upon,  
happen, occur  
**auferō, auferre, abstulī, ablātum:** to carry  
away, remove  
**barbaricus, a, um:** barbarian  
**barbarus, ī m.:** barbarian  
**careō, carēre, caruī, caritum:** to lack (+ abl.)  
**cavus, a, um:** hollow, concave  
**comprehendō, comprehendere,**  
**comprehendī, comprehensum:** to grab,  
understand  
**coniugiālis, e:** marital  
**cūra, ae f.:** care, attention  
**custōdia, ae f.:** watch, guard, protection  
**dilaniō, dilaniāre, dilaniāvī, dilaniātum:** to  
tear to pieces  
**dolor, dolōris m.:** pain, sorrow, distress  
**ensis, ensis m.:** sword  
**epops, epopis m.:** hoopoe, a bird with a  
crown of feathers and a long beak  
**ēvolvō, ēvolvere, ēvolvī, ēvolūtum:** to unroll  
**facinus, facinoris n.:** deed, evil deed, crime  
**forceps, forcipis f.:** pair of tongs, pincers  
**germāna, ae f.:** sister  
**gestus, ūs m.:** gesture  
**incidium, ī n.:** sign, evidence  
**index, indicis m.:** informer, that which  
informs, sign  
**iter, itineris n.:** journey, way  
**Itys, Ityos m.:** Itys, the son of Tereus and  
Procne  
**mātrōna, ae f.:** married woman, matron  
**metuō, metuere, metuī, metūtum:** to fear,  
be afraid of  
**metus, ūs m.:** fear, dread  
**minus:** (adv.) less

**miserābilis, e:** pitiable, miserable, wretched  
**mūtus, a, um:** mute, quiet, silent  
**nota, ae f.:** mark  
**penna, ae f.:** feather, wing  
**perferō, perferre, pertulī, perlātum:** to  
carry all the way  
**perficiō, perficere, perfecī, perfectum:** to  
complete, perfect  
**prōiciō, prōicere, prōiēcī, prōiectum:** to  
throw forward, fling away  
**pudor, pudōris m.:** modesty, shame  
**pūniō, pūnīre, pūnīvī, pūnītum:** to punish  
**rādix, rādīcis f.:** root  
**redeō, redīre, redīī, reditum:** to come back  
**refringō, refrigere, refrēgī, refractum:** to  
break open  
**rēs, reī f.:** a thing, affair, matter  
**rigēō, rigēre:** to be stiff, be hard  
**scelus, sceleris n.:** crime, wicked deed, evil  
**semel:** (adv.) once  
**serva, ae f.:** slave  
**sileō, silēre, siluī:** to be silent  
**sollertia, ae f.:** cleverness  
**stabulum, ī n.:** quarters, stable, brothel  
**strīdō, strīdere, strīdī:** to make a harsh noise,  
creak, hiss  
**suspendō, suspendere, suspendī,**  
**suspensum:** to hang, hang up, suspend  
**Thrācius, a, um:** of Thrace  
**tremō, tremere, tremuī:** to shake, quiver,  
tremble  
**vāgīna, ae f.:** sheath  
**vēlox, vėlōcis:** swift, quick  
**veru, ūs n.:** a spit  
**virginitās, virginitātis f.:** virginity  
**volucris, volucris f.:** a bird, flying thing

## IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE

The imperfect subjunctive is formed by adding personal endings to the present infinitive. The imperfect subjunctive of *pūniō*, *pūnīre*, *pūnīvī*, *pūnītum* is:

### Active

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<i>1st person</i>	pūnīrem	pūnīrēmus
<i>2nd person</i>	pūnīrēs	pūnīrētis
<i>3rd person</i>	pūnīret	pūnīrent

### Passive

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<i>1st person</i>	pūnīrer	pūnīrēmur
<i>2nd person</i>	pūnīrēris	pūnīrēminī
<i>3rd person</i>	pūnīrētur	pūnīrentur

### Imperfect subjunctive of *sum*, *esse*, *fuī*, *futūrum*

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<i>1st person</i>	essem	essēmus
<i>2nd person</i>	essēs	essētis
<i>3rd person</i>	esset	essent

## FEAR CLAUSES

Fear clauses are used after verbs of fearing to indicate what is feared, although sometimes an implied idea of fear can precede them. They are introduced by the words *nē* and *ut*, but, unlike most clauses which are introduced by *ut*, positive clauses are introduced by *nē* and negative clauses are introduced by *ut*. The sentence *Tereus Philomēlam, timentem nē quid malum accidat, spectat* contains a positive fear clause introduced by the present participle *timentem*. It should be translated *Tereus looks at Philomela, who fears that something bad will happen*. The sentence *Pandīōn timēbat ut Philomēla tūta esset* contains a negative fear clause introduced by the finite verb *timēbat*. It should be translated *Pandion feared that Philomela would not be safe*.

The rape-narrative about Tereus, Procne, and Philomela is one of the most violent stories in the *Metamorphoses*, and Ovid relates it in graphic detail. At the beginning of the account, Ovid tells his audience that Tereus is descended from Mars Gradivus. Augustus restored many temples and took special interest in traditional Roman cults, including the cult of Mars Gradivus. The Salii, twelve priests who performed ritual processions and dances throughout the city, were championed by the princeps and probably held feasts in the Forum of Augustus. Augustus' name was actually inserted into the *Salian Hymn* circa 28 BCE. It is possible that Ovid is using the story to make a political statement about the silencing of speech under tyranny, especially when one considers it along with the story of Arachne and Minerva, where a woven tapestry also reveals the truth.

## 22 Boreas and Orithyia

(*Met.* 6.675–721)

*Boreas, the north wind, takes Orithyia to be his wife by force when her father rejects him.*

- 1 Dolor Philomēlae et Procnēs Pandīonem ad Tartareās umbrās mīsit. Erechtheus,  
2 potēns armīs et iūstitiā, sceptrum locī moderāmenque rērum cēpit. Quattuor  
3 iuvenēs ab illō nātī sunt et totidem fēminae. Forma duārum, Ōrīthyiae et Procris,  
4 pār erat. Ē quibus Procris coniunx Cephalī erat. Athēniēnsēs Tēreum Thrācesque  
5 ōdērunt, et odium Boreae nocēbat, quia Boreas etiam terrās glaciālēs colēbat. Deus  
6 sīc Ōrīthyiā dīlētā caruit. Boreās Erechtheum cōnūbium Ōrīthyiae rogābat, et  
7 ūtēbatur precibus magis quam vīribus.
- 8 Ubi nihil blanditiīs agitur, horridus īrā, quae illī ventō solita est, rogat: “Quid enim  
9 mea tēla reliquī, saevitiā et vīrēs īramque animōsque minācēs, et precibus ūsus  
10 sum, quārum ūsus mē dēdecet? Vīs apta mihi est. Vī tristia nūbila pellō; vī freta  
11 concutiō; vī nōdōsa rōbora vertō indūrōque nivēs; vī terrās grandine pulsō. Īdem  
12 ego, cum frātēs in caelō apertō nanciscor (nam caelum est campus mihi), luctor  
13 magnō mōlīmine: medius aether nostrīs concursibus insonat et ignēs ēlīsī nūbibus  
14 cavis exsiliunt. Īdem ego, cum subīī convexa forāmina terrae supposuīque ferox  
15 mea terga cavernīs īmīs, sollicitō mānēs tōtumque orbem terrārum tremōribus

### Commentary

**4–5 *Athēniēnsēs Tēreum Thrācesque ōdērunt ... colēbat*:** The Athenians hated the Thracians because of Tereus’ outrages against Procne and Philomela. Because Boreas inhabited a land near Thrace, he too was hated by the Athenians.

**6 *Boreās Erechtheum cōnūbium Ōrīthyiae rogābat*:** The verb *rogāre* takes an accusative both of the person asked and the thing requested.

**8 *quae illī ventō solita est*:** The antecedent of *quae* is *īra*.

**9 *saevitiā et vīrēs īramque animōsque minācēs*:** The accusatives explain Boreas’ *tēla*.

**10 *quārum ūsus mē dēdecet*:** The impersonal verb *dēdecet* takes an accusative of the person or thing not fitted. The relative pronoun *quarum* refers to *precibus*. Translate: *The use of which things is not fitting for me.*

**11–14 *Īdem ... Īdem*:** These demonstratives have an adverbial force here. Translate: *Likewise ...*

**aperiō, aperīre, aperuī, apertum:** to open,  
uncover, lay bare  
**Athēniēnsis, e:** of Athens  
**caverna, ae f.:** cavern, cave  
**Cephalus, ī m.:** Cephalus, son of Pandion  
**concursum, ūs m.:** collision, attack  
**concutiō, concutere, concussī, concussum:**  
to beat, strike, shake violently  
**convexus, a, um:** arched, vaulted  
**dēdecet, dēdecēre, dēdecuit:** (impers. verb)  
it is unfitting, not suitable  
**diligō, diligere, dilēxī, dilēctum:** to have  
affection for, choose  
**ēlidō, ēlidere, ēlīsī, ēlīsum:** to squeeze out,  
strike  
**Erechtheus, ī m.:** Erechtheus, an early king  
of Athens  
**exsiliō, exsilīre, exsiluī, exsultum:** to jump  
out  
**ferox, ferōcis:** courageous, wild, warlike  
**forāmen, forāminis n.:** an opening, hole  
**glaciālis, e:** icy, frozen  
**grandō, grandinis f.:** hail, hailstorm  
**indūrō, indūrāre, indūrāvī, indūrātum:** to  
harden, make hard  
**insonō, insonāre, insonuī:** to resound  
**luctor, luctārī, luctātus sum:** to wrestle,  
struggle, contend  
**iūstitia, ae f.:** justice  
**magis:** (adv.) more, rather

**mānēs, mānium m. pl.:** ghosts, souls of the  
departed  
**mināx, minācis:** threatening  
**moderāmen, moderāminis n.:** a means of  
guiding, government  
**mōlimen, mōliminis n.:** great effort,  
exertion  
**nanciscor, nanciscī, nactus sum:** to meet,  
light upon  
**nōdōsus, a, um:** knotty  
**nix, nivis f.:** snow  
**nūbilum, ī n.:** cloud mass  
**ōdī, ōdisse:** (defect. verb) to hate  
**odium, ī n.:** hatred  
**Ōrithyia, ae f.:** Orithyia, a daughter of  
Erechtheus  
**pār, paris:** equal, like  
**pellō, pellere, pepulī, pulsum:** to beat, strike,  
drive away  
**Procris, Procris f.:** Procris, a daughter of  
Erechtheus  
**pulsō, pulsāre, pulsāvī, pulsātum:** to beat  
**quia:** (conj.) because  
**rōbur, rōboris n.:** oak  
**saevitia, ae f.:** ferocity, savagery  
**Tartareus, a, um:** of Tartarus, a region of the  
Underworld  
**Thrax, Thrācis:** of Thrace  
**umbra, ae f.:** shade, shadow, dead spirit  
**ūtor, ūtī, ūsus sum:** to use (+ abl.)

16 meīs. His vīribus uxōrem petivisse dēbuī. Erechtheus socer mihi nōn ōrandus erat,  
17 sed faciendus erat!

18 Locūtus haec verba et alia verba nōn inferiōra, Boreās pennās excussit, quārum  
19 iactātibus omnis tellūs adflāta est et lātum aequor perhorruit. Trahēns pulveream  
20 pallam per summa cacūmina humum verrit. Tectus cālīgine Boreās fulvīs ālīs  
21 Ōrīthyiam amplectitur. Dum volat, ignēs amōris fortius ardent. Nec raptor prius  
22 cursūs suppressit, quam populōs et moenia Ciconum tenet.

23 Illic Ōrīthyia coniunx gelidī tyrannī facta est, et illic ēnīxa partūs gemellōs genetrix  
24 facta est. Quī cētera mātris, sed pennās genitōris habuērunt. Memorant hās pennās  
25 ūnā cum corporibus nōn nātās esse. Prīmum Calais et Zētēs implūmēs erant, sed  
26 puerīs adolescentibus pennae crēvērunt. Postea Calais et Zētēs vellus aureum cum  
27 Minyīs per mare in prīmā carīnā petivērunt.

### Commentary

**16–17 *Erechtheus socer mihi nōn ōrandus erat, sed faciendus erat*:** Understand *esse* before *socer* and *mihi*, a dative of agent, with both passive periphrastic constructions.

**18–19 *quārum iactātibus*:** *iactātibus* is an ablative of means. Translate: *by the flutterings of which*

**21–2 *prius . . . quam*:** The conjunction *priusquam* (separated here) means *before*.

**24 *Quī cētera mātris, sed pennās genitōris habuērunt*:** The antecedent of *quī* is *partūs gemellōs*. Relative pronouns often begin sentences in Latin.

**adflō, adflāre, adflāvī, adflātum:** to blow on  
**adolescō, adolescere, adolēvī:** to grow up  
**amplector, amplexī, amplexus sum:** to  
embrace, wrap around  
**Calais, is m.:** Calais, a son of Boreas and  
Orithyia  
**cāligō, cāliginis f.:** darkness, mist  
**Cicones, um m. pl.:** Ciconians, a people in  
Thrace  
**cursus, ūs m.:** course, path, journey  
**ēnītor, ēnītī, ēnīxus sum:** to struggle, exert  
oneself, give birth to  
**excutiō, excutere, excussī, excussum:** to  
shake out  
**fortior, ius:** stronger, more powerful  
**gemellus, a, um:** twin  
**genetrix, genetrīcis f.:** mother  
**genitor, genitōris m.:** father  
**iactātus, ūs m.:** a shaking, fluttering, moving  
quickly up and down

**implūmis, e:** featherless  
**inferior, ius:** lower  
**lātus, a, um:** wide, broad  
**loquor, loquī, locūtus sum:** to speak  
**mare, maris n.:** the sea  
**memorō, memorāre, memorāvī,**  
**memorātum:** to recall, relate  
**Minyae, ārum m. pl.:** Minyans, the  
Argonauts  
**partus, ūs m.:** offspring, birth  
**perhorrēscō, perhorrēscere, perhorruī:** to  
shudder, be terrified at  
**pulvereus, a, um:** dusty  
**supprimō, suppressere, suppressī,**  
**suppressum:** to block, check,  
push down  
**ūnā:** (adv.) together  
**verrō, verrere, verrī, versum:** to sweep  
**Zētēs, ae m.:** Zetes, a son of Boreas and  
Orithyia

**DEPONENT VERBS**

Deponent verbs have passive forms but are translated actively. So, *utor* is translated *I use*, even though it looks like a passive verb, and *uti* is translated *to use* rather than *to be used*. Deponent verbs only have three principal parts, and all of these have active meanings. The participles of deponent verbs are translated just like the participles of regular verbs, with the exception of the perfect participle, which for deponent verbs is translated actively (see table). Some deponent verbs, including *utor* (*to use*), *fungor* (*to occupy oneself with something*), *potior* (*to possess*), and *fruor* (*to enjoy*), take an ablative object.

**PARTICIPLES OF DEPONENT VERBS**

<i>Present active participle</i>	<i>utēns</i>	using
<i>Perfect participle</i>	<i>ūsus, a, um</i>	having used
<i>Future active participle</i>	<i>ūtūrus, a, um</i>	about to use
<i>Future passive participle</i>	<i>ūtendus, a, um</i>	to be used, needing to be used

The story of Boreas and Orithyia ends Book 6 of the *Metamorphoses*, and the final lines of the book are about the sons born to the north wind and his new bride, Calais and Zetes. Ovid describes how the boys later went with Jason and the Argonauts to fetch the golden fleece. The story of the quest for the golden fleece and Jason’s love affair with Medea begins the very next book. Ovid’s account of the story of Boreas and Orithyia is quite short, and one wonders why he did not just save it for the beginning of Book 7. This organization is another example of how stories in the poem frequently bleed from one book to the next, and there often do not seem to be clear divisions between books, thus making Ovid’s poem seem even more like a complex tapestry of overlapping images.



# Taylor & Francis

Taylor & Francis Group

<http://taylorandfrancis.com>

## 23 Medea's rejuvenation of Aeson

(*Met.* 7.159–293)

*Medea, the daughter of King Aeëtes of Colchis and a woman skilled in witchcraft, restores youthfulness to Jason's father:*

- 1 Calais et Zētēs, filiī Boreae, cum Iāsone ut vellere aureō potīrentur nāvigāverunt.
- 2 Mēdēa, filia Aeētae, quī vellus habēbat, capta amōre Iāsonem herbīs et verbīs cantātīs
- 3 iūvit, et Iāsōn vellus cēpit. Fīlius Aesonis, superbus spoliō et portāns sēcum
- 4 Mēdēam coniugem, portum Iolcī tetigit. Haemoniae mātres grandaevīque patrēs
- 5 dōna prō nātīs receptīs tulērunt, et tūra in flammīs liquefēcērunt. Victimae cecidērunt.
- 6 Omnēs Iāsonī grātābantur. Aesōn autem abfuit, iam fessus senīlibus annīs.
  
- 7 Iāsōn dīcit: “Ō coniunx, cui confiteor mē dēbere salūtem meam, quamquam cuncta mihi
- 8 dedistī, sī tua carmina facere hoc possunt (quid enim nōn possunt?), dēme meōs annōs et
- 9 adde annōs meōs demptōs patrī.” Nec lacrimās tenet, et Mēdēa pietāte rogantis mōta est.
- 10 Mēdēa respondet: “Quod scelus ē tuō ōre excidit, coniunx? Videorne posse transcribere
- 11 cuiquam spatium tuae vītae? Hecatē hoc nōn sinet. Sed experiar dare maius mūnus istō
- 12 quod petis, Iāsōn. Meā arte, nōn tuīs annīs, longum aevum patris revocāre temptābō.”

### Commentary

**7 cui confiteor mē dēbere salūtem meam:** Ovid begins with a relative pronoun and then moves into indirect statement after *confiteor*. Translate: *to whom I confess that I owe my welfare*.

**11–12 maius mūnus istō quod petis:** *istō* is an ablative of comparison after *maius* and also the antecedent of *quod*.

**absum, abesse, abfuī, abfutūrum:** to be away from, be absent

**Aeētēs, Aeētae m.:** Aeētes, king of Colchis

**Aesōn, Aesonis m.:** Aeson, father of Jason  
**cantō, cantāre, cantāvī, cantātum:** to sing  
**confiteor, confitēri, confessus sum:** to acknowledge, confess

**dōnum, ī n.:** gift

**grandaevus, a, um:** aged, old

**grātor, grātārī, grātātus sum:** to congratulate, wish joy to

**Haemonius, a, um:** of Haemonia, of Thessaly

**Hecatē, ēs f.:** Hecate, goddess of witchcraft

**Iāsōn, Iāsonis m.:** Jason, leader of the Argonauts

**Iolcus, ī f.:** Iolcus, a city in Thessaly and Jason's home

**liquefaciō, liquefacere, liquefeci, liquefactum:** to melt, liquefy

**Mēdēa, ae f.:** Medea, a princess of Colchis and a sorceress

**pietās, pietātis f.:** sense of duty, piety

**potior, potiri, potitus sum:** to obtain, possess (+ acc. or abl.)

**salus, salūtis f.:** health, welfare, safety

**senilis, e:** aged, old

**transcribō, transcribere, transcripsi, transcriptum:** to write over, transfer, convey

- 13    Iam nōna diēs et nōna nox Mēdēam lustrantem terrās in currū pennīsque dracōnum ut  
 14    aptās herbās et ūtilēs sūcōs invenīret vīdit. Statuit bīnās ārās dē caespīte: dextera āra  
 15    Hecatēs est, et in laevā parte āra Iuventae est. Duās scrobēs ut sacra faciat effodit.  
 16    Cultrum in guttur bidentis ātrī cōnicit, et sanguine patulās fossās perfundit. Tum  
 17    invergēs carchēsia liquidī mellis et carchēsia tepidī lactis, simul verba fundit.  
 18    Nūminibus precibus plācātīs, Mēdēa corpus fessum Aesonis prōferri ad ārās iubet.  
 19    Carmine Aesonem in somnum resolvit, et corpus simile exanimī in herbīs strātīs porrigit.
- 20    Mēdēa, passīs capillīs, rītū Bacchantium flagrantēs ārās circumit. Ter flammā, ter aquā,  
 21    ter sulfure lustrat. Intereā medicāmen in aēnō fervet; medicāmen exsultat et spūmīs  
 22    tumentibus albet. Mēdēa addit herbās, et immiscet. Quācumque ignis spūmās ex  
 23    cavō aēnō ēicit et guttae calentēs in terram cadunt, humus vernat flōrēsque et mollia  
 24    pābula surgunt. Quae simul atque vīdet, ēnse strictō Mēdēa iugulum senis reclūdit, et  
 25    Mēdēa, passa veterum cruōrem exīre, corpus sūcīs suīs replet. Postquam Aesōn  
 26    medicāmen combibit, barba et coma colōrem nigrum rapit, maciēs fugit, pallor situsque  
 27    abeunt, et membra luxuriant. Aesōn mīrātur et hunc esse sē ante quater dēnōs annōs  
 28    reminiscitur.

### Commentary

**13–14 *Iam nōna diēs et nōna nox . . . vīdit*:** Ovid personifies the day and night here, making them the subjects of the sentence. *pennīs* is an ablative of means. The singular verb *vīdit* emphasizes the subjects as individual elements.

**18 *Nūminibus precibus plācātīs*:** *precibus* is an ablative of means. The other ablatives are used as an ablative absolute.

**24 *Quae simul atque vīdet*:** The antecedents of *quae*, which is neuter plural, are all of the things which have just been described.

**27 *ante quater dēnōs annōs*:** Literally, *before four-tens of years*. Translate: *forty years before*.

**albēo, albēre:** to be white

**āter, ātra, ātrum:** black, dark

**Bacchantēs, Bacchantium f. pl.:** followers of Bacchus

**bidens, bidentis:** with two teeth (often used for sheep)

**bīnī, bīnae, bīna:** two, double, a pair

**caespis, caespitis m.:** turf, sod, earthen mound

**caleō, calēre, caluī:** to be hot

**carchēsium, ī n.:** drinking cup

**circumeō, circumīre, circumī or circumīvī, circumītum:** to go around

**combibō, combibere, combibī:** to drink

**coniciō, conicere, conīcī, coniectum:** to throw, bring together, drive, force

**culter, cultī m.:** knife

**dēnī, dēnae, dēna:** by tens

**effodiō, effodere, effodī, effossum:** to dig out

**ēiciō, ēicere, ēīcī, ēiectum:** to throw out, expel

**experior, experīrī, expertus sum:** to try, test, attempt

**ferveō, fervēre, ferbuī:** to boil, burn

**flagrō, flagrāre, flagrāvī, flagrātum:** to blaze

**fossa, ae f.:** ditch, trench

**immisceō, immiscēre, immiscuī,**

**immixtum:** to mix in, blend, intermingle

**inveniō, invenīre, invēnī, inventum:** to find, discover

**invergō, invergere:** to pour upon

**Iuventa, ae f.:** Juventa, the goddess of youth

**luxuriō, luxuriāre, luxuriāvī, luxuriātum:** to be abundant, enlarge, grow rapidly

**maciēs, maciē f.:** leanness

**mīror, mīrārī, mīrātus sum:** to admire, wonder at

**nōnus, a, um:** ninth

**pallor, pallōris m.:** paleness

**pandō, pandere, pandī, passum:** to spread out, extend

**patior, patī, passus sum:** to suffer, allow, experience, tolerate

**patulus, a, um:** open, wide, broad

**plācātus, a, um:** quiet, peaceful, calm

**prōferō, prōferre, prōtulī, prōlātum:** to carry forward, bring forth, offer

**quācumque:** (adv.) wherever

**reclūdō, reclūdere, reclūsī, reclūsum:** to open, reveal, disclose

**reminiscor, reminisci:** to recollect, remember

**repleō, replēre, replēvī, replētum:** to refill, fill up

**resolvō, resolvere, resolvī, resolūtum:** to untie, release, open

**rītus, ūs m.:** religious ceremony, rite

**scrobis, scrobis m.:** ditch, trench

**simul:** (adv.) at the same time

**situs, ūs m.:** decay, neglect

**spūma, ae f.:** foam

**statuō, statuere, statuī, statūtum:** to set up, fix upright

**stringō, stringere, strixī, strictum:** to pull out (a weapon), tighten

**sulfur, sulfuris n.:** brimstone, sulfur

**ūtilis, e:** useful, beneficial, profitable

**vernō, vernāre, vernāvī, vernātum:** to flourish, bloom

## PURPOSE CLAUSES

Purpose clauses are subjunctive clauses which indicate why something is done. They are introduced by *ut* or, in the case of a negative purpose clause, *nē*. In the sentence *Calais et Zētēs, filiū Boreae, cum Iāsonē ut vellere aureō potirentur nāvigāverunt*, the purpose clause is *ut vellere aureō potirentur*. The sentence should be translated *Calais and Zetes, sons of Boreas, sailed with Jason in order to obtain the golden fleece*. Purpose clauses are common, but there also are other types of subjunctive clauses introduced by *ut*. Frequently, you must use context to determine which kind of clause is at work.

Medea is the granddaughter of the Sun-god Helios, and she is a niece of Circe, the sorceress who turns Odysseus' men into pigs in the *Odyssey*. Like her aunt, Medea is skilled in magic and in concocting powerful potions, and Jason very much is dependent on her talents for his success in bringing the golden fleece back from Colchis to Iolcus. When they return to Iolcus with the fleece, Pelias refuses to turn the throne over to Jason, who is the rightful heir, and Medea avenges the offense in a manner so gruesome that the two are driven out of Iolcus. They end up in Corinth, where Jason casts Medea aside for the princess Glauke. To punish Jason, Medea sends the princess a poisoned robe and then kills her own children. She then escapes to Athens, where King Aegeus accepts her as his wife. Later, Medea attempts to kill Aegeus' son Theseus.



# Taylor & Francis

Taylor & Francis Group

<http://taylorandfrancis.com>

## 24 Medea's punishment of Pelias

(*Met.* 7.294–349)

*When the daughters of Pelias learn of Medea's rejuvenation of Aeson, they ask Medea to restore their father's vigor. Medea uses the opportunity to avenge Pelias' ill treatment of her husband.*

- 1 Iuventūte Aesonis redditā Mēdēa falsum odium cum coniuge adsimulat, et supplex  
2 ad limina Peliae confugit. Quoniam Peliās ipse gravis senectūte est, nātae Mēdēam  
3 excipiunt. Tempore parvō, callida fēmina imāgine falsā amicitiae fidem virginum  
4 capit, et, dum dīcit situm Aesonis demptum esse (in hāc parte fābulae morātur),  
5 spēs est virginibus arte Mēdēae suum parentem posse revirēscere. Nātae artem  
6 similem petunt. Illa brevī spatiō silet, et dubitāre vidētur. Animōs rogantium fictā  
7 gravitāte suspendit. Ubi mox pollicētur, dīcit: “Ut fidūcia maior huius mūneris  
8 sit, dux gregis quī maximus aevō est inter ovēs agnus medicāmine meō fiet.”
- 9 Prōtinus lāniger, fessus innumerīs annīs, attrahēbātur, cornibus flexīs circum cava  
10 tempora. Mēdēa cultrō marcens guttur fōdit, et ferrum exiguō sanguine maculāvit;  
11 membra sūcōsque tantōs venēficōs in aēnō cavō mersit ut cornua exūrent et  
12 corpus minuerent. Tener bālātus in mediō aēnō audītus est. Sine morā, virginibus  
13 bālātum mīrantibus, agnus exsiluit et lactāns ūber quaesīvit.
- 14 Fīliae Peliae obstipuērunt. Postquam prōmissa fidem exhibērunt, tum vērō fīliae  
15 artem Mēdēae cupiēbant. Post trēs noctēs, sīdera radiantia micābant, cum fallax

### Commentary

**3 *Tempore parvō*:** This is an example of an ablative of time within which. Translate: *within a short time*.

**5 *spēs est virginibus arte Mēdēae suum parentem posse revirēscere*:** The idea that there is hope (*spēs est*) introduces the indirect statement.

**6–7 *Animōs rogantum fictā gravitāte suspendit*:** In other words, Medea holds the daughters in suspense with feigned seriousness.

**8 *quī maximus aevō est*:** *aevō* is an ablative of specification which explains *maximus*. Translate: *greatest in age*.

**9 *cornibus flexīs*:** an ablative absolute.

**10 *ferrum exiguō sanguine maculāvit*:** The ram is so old that it has very little blood.

**14 *Postquam prōmissa fidem exhibērunt*:** The substantive *prōmissa* is the subject of *exhibērunt*.

**adsimulō, adsimulāre, adsimulāvī,**  
**adsimulātum:** to make like, imitate  
**amīcitiā, ae f.:** friendship  
**bālātus, ūs m.:** a bleating  
**callidus, a, um:** skillful, crafty, cunning  
**confugiō, confugere, confūgi:** to flee to, take  
refuge with  
**exiguus, a, um:** scant, few, small  
**exūrō, exūrere, exussī, exustum:** to burn  
out, burn up  
**fallax, fallācis:** deceitful, deceptive  
**fictus, a, um:** formed, fashioned, feigned  
**fides, fideī f.:** trust, belief, faith  
**fīdūcia, ae f.:** trust, confidence, security  
**fīō, fierī, factus sum:** to become, occur, be  
done  
**fodiō, fodere, fōdī, fossum:** to dig, pierce,  
stab  
**innumerus, a, um:** innumerable, countless  
**iuventus, iuventūtis f.:** youth, prime of life  
**lactō, lactāre, lactāvī, lactātum:** to give  
milk, contain milk

**lāniger, lānigerī m.:** ram  
**līmen, līminis n.:** threshold  
**maculō, maculāre, maculāvī, maculātum:**  
to stain, pollute  
**marceō, marcere:** to wither, be faint,  
be weak  
**minuō, minuere, minuī, minūtum:** to  
lessen, diminish  
**moror, morārī, morātus sum:** to delay, linger  
**obstipescō, obstipescere, obstipuī:** to be  
amazed  
**ovis, ovis f.:** sheep  
**Peliās, Peliae m.:** Pelias, king of Thessaly  
**polliceor, pollicērī, pollicitus sum:** to  
promise, offer  
**revirescō, revirescere, revirescuī:** to grow  
strong again  
**senectus, senectūtis f.:** old age  
**spēs, speī f.:** hope  
**ūber, ūberis n.:** udder  
**venēficus, a, um:** magical, poisonous  
**vērō:** (adv.) truly

- 16 fēmina pūrum laticem et herbās sine vīribus in rapidō igne impōsuit. Iam somnus  
 17 similis necī rēgem (et, cum rēge, custōdēs eius) habēbat, quem cantus et potentia  
 18 magicōrum verbōrum dederant. Nātae in līmina cum Mēdēā intrāvērunt et  
 19 circumiērunt torum.
- 20 “Quid, inertēs, nunc dubitātis?” Mēdēā dīcit. “Stringite gladiōs et haurīte veterum  
 21 crurorem ut vacuās vēnās iuvenālī sanguine repleam! In manibus vestrīs vīta  
 22 aetāsque parentis sunt. Sī pietās ulla est nec spēs inānēs agitātis, senectūtem tēlis  
 23 exigite. Ferrō coniectō saniem ēmittite!”
- 24 Ut quaeque pia est, quaeque impia est. Nē scelerāta sit, quaeque scelus facit. Haud  
 25 tamen ulla ictūs suōs spectāre potest, oculōsque reflectunt, dantēs caeca vulnera  
 26 saevīs dextrīs. Peliās, fluēns cruōre, tamen sē in cubitō adlevat, et sēmilacer ex torō  
 27 consurgere temptat. Inter tot gladiōs tendēns braccia ille clāmat: “Quid facitis,  
 28 nātae? Vōs ictūs tantōs saevōs pellitis ut mē necētis!”
- 29 Animī manūsque illīs cecidērunt. Virginibus dubitantibus, Mēdēā guttur senis  
 30 locūtūrī plūra fōdit, et corpus laniātum in calidīs undīs mersit. Statim Mēdēā  
 31 serpentibus pennātīs in aurās īvit, et fūgit certās poenās. Pennīs vīpereīs Corinthiās  
 32 terrās contigit. Postquam nova nūpta venēnīs Colchicīs arsit, impius ēnsis Mēdēae  
 33 sanguine nātōrum suōrum perfūsus est. Quis huic fābulae crēdiderit?

## Commentary

**17–18 *quem cantus et potentia magicōrum verbōrum dederant*:** The word *somnus* is the antecedent of *quem*. Medea had caused the king and his guards to sleep by means of her spells.

**24 *Ut quaeque pia est*:** Translate *ut* here as *as*. *quaeque* refers to each of Pelias' daughters. In other words, in acting to help their father, the daughters actually commit an impious act.

**24 *Nē scelerāta sit*:** This is a negative purpose clause.

**31 *serpentibus pennātīs* and *Pennīs vīpereīs*:** Both constructions are ablatives of means.

**32–3 *Postquam nova nūpta . . . perfūsus est*:** In Corinth, Jason rejects Medea for the princess of that city. Medea sends a poisoned robe to the girl which causes her to burn up and then kills her own children to punish Jason.

**33 *Quis huic fābulae crēdiderit*:** The subjunctive is used in questions implying doubt, indignation, or impossibility. Here, a perfect subjunctive is used. Translate: *Who could believe this story?*

**adlevō, adlevāre, adlevāvī, adlevātum:** to lift up, erect

**agitō, agitāre, agitāvī, agitātum:** to drive about, keep in movement, agitate

**caecus, a, um:** blind

**calidus, a, um:** warm, hot

**Colchicus, a, um:** of Colchis, a region on the Black Sea

**consurgō, consurgere, consurrexī, consurrectum:** to raise oneself, rise, stand up

**Corinthius, a, um:** of Corinth, a city in southern Greece

**cubitus, ī n.:** elbow

**ēmittō, ēmittere, ēmīsī, ēmissum:** to send out, send away

**exigō, exigere, exēgī, exactum:** to drive out

**hauriō, haurīre, hausī, haustum:** to draw out, drink

**impius, a, um:** impious, disrespectful

**impōnō, impōnere, imposuī, impositum:** to lay or place upon, impose on

**inānis, e:** empty, void

**iners, inertis:** inactive, idle

**iuvenālis, e:** youthful

**nex, necis f.:** death

**pennātus, a, um:** winged, feathered

**potentia, ae f.:** power, ability

**quisque, quaeque, quidque:** (pron.) each, every

**rapidus, a, um:** swift, hurrying

**reflectō, reflectere, reflexī, reflectum:** to turn back, reflect

**saniēs, saniei f.:** diseased blood, poison

**sēmilacer, sēmilacera, sēmilacerum:** half-mangled

**vacuus, a, um:** empty, void

## PERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE

The perfect subjunctive active is almost identical to the future perfect indicative. When translating, it sometimes can be difficult to determine whether a verb is future perfect indicative or perfect subjunctive, and one must use context to decide which form is at work. The perfect subjunctive passive is formed by a combination of the perfect passive participle and the present subjunctive of *esse*.

### *crēdō, crēdere, crēdidī, crēditum*: active

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<i>1st person</i>	crēdiderim	crēdiderimus
<i>2nd person</i>	crēdideris	crēdideritis
<i>3rd person</i>	crēdiderit	crēdiderint

### *crēdō, crēdere, crēdidī, crēditum*: passive

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<i>1st person</i>	crēditum sim	crēdita simus
<i>2nd person</i>	crēditum sis	crēdita sitis
<i>3rd person</i>	crēditum sit	crēdita sint

### *sum, esse, fuī, futurum*

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<i>1st person</i>	fuerim	fuerimus
<i>2nd person</i>	fueris	fueritis
<i>3rd person</i>	fuerit	fuerint

## RESULT CLAUSES

Like purpose clauses, result clauses are subjunctive clauses introduced by *ut*, although negative result clauses use words other than *nē*, such as *nōn*; *numquam*; *nihil*; or *nullus, a, um*. Result clauses show the outcome of an action. It sometimes can be difficult to distinguish between result clauses and purpose clauses, but words in the main clause such as *ita* (*thus*); *tantus, a, um* (*so much, so great*); *sic* (*thus*); and *tam* (*so, to such a degree*) often signal that an *ut* clause which follows is a result clause. For example, in the sentence *Membra sūcōsque tantōs venēficōs in aēnō cavō mersit ut cornua exūrerent et corpus minuerent*, the adjective *tantōs* indicates that *ut cornua exūrerent et corpus minuerent* is a result clause. The sentence should be translated

*She plunged the limbs and juices so magical in the hollow bronze that they burned off the horns and reduced the body in size.* That the juices burned off the horns and reduced the animal in size is the outcome of the power of the magical juices. A purpose clause would indicate why Medea used the magical juices rather than the result of their use.

Medea's use of potions and magical drugs is in keeping with ancient ideas about the exotic nature of such compounds. In Homer's *Odyssey*, for example, Helen drops a *pharmakon*, which is a Greek word for drug, into the wine when Telemachus visits Sparta. The situation is uncomfortable because Telemachus is looking for his father, who went to war for Helen's sake, and Helen aims to ease the tension. Homer tells his audience that Helen got her drug from Egypt, where she met a woman skilled in such arts. Helen's source for the drug is exotic, just as Medea herself is exotic in that she is from Colchis on the Black Sea. Interestingly, poetry itself is frequently described by ancient authors as having an effect on its audience which is similar to the effect of powerful drugs.

## 25 Scylla and Nisus

(*Met.* 8.1–151)

*When the daughter of King Nisus falls in love with Minos, who wages war against her kingdom, she offers the enemy-king her father's famous purple lock of hair.*

- 1 Rēx Mīnōs litora Megarae vastābat et vīrēs suās in urbe temptābat, quam Nīsus  
2 habēbat. Cui crīnis purpureus inter honorātōs cānōs in mediō vertice haerēbat. Crīnis  
3 splendidus fidūcia magnī regnī erat. Sex novae lūnae resurrexērant, et adhūc fortūna  
4 bellī pendēbat, diūque Victōria inter utrumque rēgem dubiīs pennīs volābat.
- 5 In urbe, turris addita erat vōcālibus mūrīs in quibus prōlēs Lātōnae fertur auream  
6 lyram dēposuisse: sonus eius in saxō haesit. In pace, Scylla, filia Nīsī, illūc  
7 ascendere solēbat, et, iactāns lapillum, resonantia saxa petere solēbat. Nunc in  
8 bellō, dē turre spectāre certāmina Martis solēbat. Iam nōmina procerum armaque  
9 equōsque habitūsque pharetrāsque cognōvit.
- 10 Ante omnēs aliōs faciem Mīnōis nōverat—plūs etiam quam satis nōvisse est.  
11 Mīnōs, rēx Crētum, seu caput casside cristātā abdiderat, in galeā formōsus erat; seu  
12 clipeum fulgentem sumpserat, clipeum sūmpsisse decēbat; seu hastīlia torserat,  
13 virgō artem et virēs laudābat. Cum vērō faciem casside demptā nūdāverat  
14 purpureusque tergum albī equī insigne strātīs pictīs premēbat, vix virgō compos  
15 mentis sānae erat. Impetus illī erat ferre virgineōs gradūs per agmen hostīle;  
16 impetus illī erat mittere corpus ē summīs in Cnōsia castra.

### Commentary

**2 Cui crīnis purpureus:** The antecedent of *cui* is *Nīsus*.

**2–3 Crīnis splendidus fidūcia magnī regnī erat:** Nisus' purple lock of hair was his source of strength, so the security of his kingdom was dependent on it.

**5–6 turris addita erat vōcālibus mūrīs . . . dēposuisse:** The walls of rock themselves produced musical sounds, perhaps from the wind blowing through them. *fertur* is used here to mean *it is said* and introduces the indirect statement. Latona is Apollo's mother.

**10 plūs etiam quam satis nōvisse est:** Translate: *even more than it is sufficient to know*. The infinitive is used with *satis est*. Ovid's language reveals Scylla's powerful attraction to the Cretan king.

**14 purpureusque tergum . . . premēbat:** Minos is wearing the regal color purple. *insigne* describes *tergum*, and *strātīs pictīs* is an ablative qualifying *insigne*.

**15 impetus illī erat:** *illī* refers to Scylla. In other words, she wants to walk or jump off the tower into the Cretan camp.

**abdō, abdere, abdidī, abditum:** to hide, conceal  
**agmen, agminis n.:** army, battle line  
**ascendō, ascendere, ascendī, ascensum:** to ascend, climb  
**cassis, cassidis f.:** helmet  
**castra, ōrum n. pl.:** military encampment  
**Cnōsius, a, um:** of Knossos, a city on Crete  
**compos, compotis:** having mastery of, possessed of (+ gen.)  
**Crēs, Crētis m.:** a Cretan  
**dubius, a, um:** doubtful, uncertain  
**fulgeō, fulgēre, fulsī:** to flash, shine  
**gradus, ūs m.:** step, pace  
**habitus, ūs m.:** condition, attire, dress, bearing  
**hastile, hastilis n.:** shaft of a spear, spear  
**honōrātus, a, um:** honored, respected  
**hostilis, e:** hostile, unfriendly  
**insignis, insigne:** distinguished, remarkable  
**lapillus, ī m.:** little stone, pebble  
**lītus, litoris n.:** the shore  
**Megara, ae f.:** Megara, a city in Greece  
**Mīnōs, Mīnōis m.:** Minos, king of Crete

**mūrus, ī m.:** city wall  
**Nīsus, ī m.:** Nisus, king of Megara  
**nūdō, nūdāre, nūdāvī, nūdātum:** to strip, lay bare  
**pax, pācis f.:** peace, tranquility  
**resonō, resonāre, resonāvī, resonātum:** to resound, echo  
**resurgō, resurgere, surrexī, resurrectum:** to rise again, appear again  
**sānus, a, um:** healthy, rational  
**Scylla, ae f.:** Scylla, daughter of Nisus  
**sonus, ī m.:** a sound, noise  
**splendidus, a, um:** splendid, bright, distinguished  
**sūmō, sūmere, sumpsī, sumptum:** to take up, assume, select  
**strātum, ī n.:** coverlet, horsecloth  
**turris, turris f.:** a tower, citadel  
**vastō, vastāre, vastāvī, vastātum:** to devastate, ravage, make empty  
**vertex, verticis m.:** whirlpool, crown of head, summit  
**vōcālis, e:** uttering sounds, singing, vocal, sonorous

- 17 Ut spectāns candida tentōria rēgis Crētum sedēbat, dixit: “Doleō, quod Mīnōs  
 18 hostis mihi amantī est. Sī fēmina quae tē peperit tālis erat, pulcherrime rēgum,  
 19 quālis es ipse, meritō rēx deōrum amore illius arsit. Ō ego ter fēlix erō, sī, lāpsa per  
 20 aurās pennīs in Cnōsiaca castra, poterō fatērī meum amōrem rēgī. Custos aditūs  
 21 servat, et pater claustra portārum tenet. Patrem solum timeō; sōlus mea vōta  
 22 morātur. Amor mē hortātur ut perdam quod obstat meō amōrī. Opus est mihi crīne  
 23 paternō. Ille mihi est pretiōsior aurō; ille purpureus crīnis mē beātā faciet.”
- 24 Tālibus dictīs, nox intervēnit, et audācia in tenebrīs crēvit. Taciturna filia  
 25 thalamum paternum intrat et (heu facinus!) parentem crīne spoliāt. Portāns  
 26 praedam nefandam per mediōs hostēs pervenit ad rēgem. Scylla illī dīcit: “Amor  
 27 facinus suāsīt: ego Scylla, filia Nīsī, patriam Penātēsque meōs tibi trādō. Petō ā tē  
 28 ut mē amēs. Cape purpureum crīnem pignus amōris.” Mīnōs, turbātus imāgine factī  
 29 novī, mūnus refugit, et respondet: “Dī tē summoveant ē suō orbe, ō infāmia nostrī  
 30 saeculī. Tellūs pontusque tibi negēntur! Certē ego nōn patiar tantum monstrum  
 31 contingere Crētā, incūnābula Iovis.”
- 32 Lēgibus captīs hostibus impositīs, Mīnōs imperāvit ut classis solverētur et puppēs  
 33 rēmige impellerentur. Scylla clāmat: “Mē miseram! Mīnōs virōs eius properāre  
 34 iubet, et cīvēs patriae mē odērunt. Sequar tē invītum, rēx Cnōsiace, et amplexa  
 35 puppim per freta longa trahar!” Vix dīxerat, insiluit in undās, et secūta est ratēs  
 36 cupīdine faciente vīrēs. Invidiōsa comes Cnōsiacae carīnae haesit. Pater, quī (modo  
 37 factus haliaetus) iam pendēbat in aurā, ibat ut illam rōstrō aduncō lacerāret. Illa  
 38 metū puppim dīmīsīt, et levis aura cadentem sustinēre vīsa est. Plūma palmīs subit:  
 39 mūtāta in avem Cīris vocātur, et hoc nōmen ā tonsō capillō adepta est.

## Commentary

**18 Sī fēmina quae tē peperit:** Minos’ mother was Europa, whom Jupiter impregnated.

**19 amore illius:** The genitive *illius* is an objective genitive. Translate: *love for that woman*.

**22–3 Opus est mihi crīne paternō:** *Opus est* (there is need) is a common construction in Latin. Here, the person in need is in the dative, and the thing needed is in the ablative.

**23 pretiōsior aurō:** *aurō* is an ablative of comparison. Translate: *more precious than gold*.

**25 et (heu facinus!) parentem crīne spoliāt:** The verb *spoliāre* here takes an accusative of the person robbed and an ablative of the thing taken.

**32 Lēgibus captīs hostibus impositīs:** *Lēgibus impositīs* is an ablative absolute, and *captīs hostibus* is dative after *impositīs*.

**36 cupīdine faciente vīrēs:** *cupīdine faciente* is an ablative absolute. *vīrēs* is the object of *faciente*.

**37–8 Illa metū puppim dīmīsīt:** *metū* is an ablative of cause. Translate: *That one let go of the ship out of fear*.

**adipiscor, adipiscī, adeptus sum:** to arrive  
at, obtain, acquire

**aditus, ūs m.:** approach, entrance, access

**aduncus, a, um:** hooked

**audācia, ae f.:** boldness, courage

**Cīris, Cīris f.:** a colorful bird

**cīvis, cīvis m. or f.:** citizen

**classis, classis f.:** fleet

**claustra, ōrum n. pl.:** bar, bolt

**Cnōsiacus, a, um:** of Knossos

**custos, custōdis m.:** guard

**dīmittō, dīmittere, dīmīsī, dīmīssum:** to  
send away, let go

**fateor, fatērī, fassus sum:** to confess,  
acknowledge

**haliaeetus, ī m.:** osprey, sea-eagle

**heu:** (interj.) oh! alas!

**hortor, hortārī, hortātus sum:** to encourage,  
urge on

**impellō, impellere, impulī, impulsum:** to  
push, drive, set in motion

**imperō, imperāre, imperāvī, imperātum:** to  
command, order

**incūnābula, ōrum n. pl.:** cradle, birthplace

**insiliō, insilīre, insilui:** to leap on, leap into

**intervenīō, intervenīre, intervēnī,  
interventum:** to come between,  
intervene, interrupt

**lābor, lābī, lapsus sum:** to glide down, fall,  
slip

**lacerō, lacerāre, lacerāvī, lacerātum:** to  
tear, lacerate

**meritō:** (adv.) deservedly, justly

**modo:** (adv.) only, just now, lately

**nefandus, a, um:** impious, heinous

**palma, ae f.:** palm of the hand

**pariō, parere, peperī, partum:** to bring  
forth, produce

**Penātēs, Penātium m. pl.:** household gods

**pervenīō, pervenīre, pervēnī, perventum:**  
to come to, reach

**plūma, ae f.:** feather, plumage

**pretiōsior, ius:** more precious, more  
valuable

**properō, properāre, properāvī,  
properātum:** to hasten

**pulcherrimus, a, um:** most beautiful

**puppis, puppis f.:** stern of a ship

**quod:** (conj.) because

**refugiō, refugere, refūgī:** to flee, escape

**rēmex, rēmigis m.:** bench of oarsmen,  
rower

**sequor, sequī, secūtus sum:** to follow,  
pursue

**suādeō, suādere, suāsī, suāsum:** to advise,  
recommend, persuade

**tentōrium, ī n.:** tent

**tondeō, tondere, totondī, tonsum:** to shear,  
clip, shave

**turbātus, a, um:** troubled, disturbed, agitated

## JUSSIVE NOUN CLAUSES

Jussive noun clauses are another type of subjunctive clause introduced by *ut* or *nē*, so they are easy to confuse with result clauses and, especially, with purpose clauses. As the name suggests, a jussive noun clause is an indirect command. These clauses are often introduced by verbs of seeking, asking, urging, or ordering, and they essentially function as objects of the verbs which introduce them. In the sentence *Amor mē hortātur ut perdam quod obstat meō amōri*, the *ut* clause is a jussive noun clause, and the sentence should be translated *Love urges me to destroy that which stands against my love*. Essentially, a jussive noun clause is just another way of expressing indirect speech, like accusative-infinitive constructions. Literally, the sentence above reads *Love urges me that I destroy that which stands against my love*. Here, the *ut* clause serves as the object of the verb *hortātur*. To some degree, jussive noun clauses are interchangeable with accusative-infinitive constructions, although certain verbs consistently govern one or the other.

In this story, Ovid presents Scylla as a girl so overcome by passion for Minos that she commits an act of incredible treachery, something which she probably would not do under normal circumstances. In Greek and Roman literature, erotic love is associated with madness, and this association is especially true for women. In Vergil's *Aeneid*, for example, when Dido discovers that Aeneas is secretly preparing to leave Carthage, she loses her mind and rages through the city in the manner of a female follower of Bacchus who has been intoxicated with the power of the god, and ultimately she kills herself. Erotic love causes one to lose control of oneself just like wine, drugs, and Bacchus himself.



# Taylor & Francis

Taylor & Francis Group

<http://taylorandfrancis.com>

## 26 Pomona and Vertumnus

(*Met.* 14.623–771)

*Vertumnus attempts to win over the wood nymph Pomona by disguise and persuasion.*

- 1 Pōmōna sub rēge Procā vixit, quā nulla inter Latīnās hamadryadēs hortōs sollertius  
2 coluit, et nulla studiōsior arboreī fētūs fuit. Illa nōn silvās nec amnēs, sed rūs et  
3 rāmōs ferentēs pōma amābat, unde nōmen tenēbat. Nec dextera iaculum habēbat,  
4 sed habēbat aduncam falcem quā luxuriem premēbat et braccia spatiantia  
5 compescēbat. Nec arborēs sentīre sitim passa est, sed recurvās fibrās bibulārū  
6 rādīcū irrigāvit. Hic amor Pōmōnae, hoc studium erat. Nulla cupīdō Veneris erat.  
7 Metuēns vim agrestium, sē in pōmariō clausit, et prohibuit refūgitque accessūs  
8 virīlēs.
- 9 In amōre nymphae deus Vertumnus omnēs superābat, sed nōn fēlix erat. Ō  
10 quotiens in habitū dūrī messōris—et imāgō vērī messōris fuit—aristās in corbe  
11 Pōmōnae tulit! Sī stimulum manū portet, iūrēs deum modo iuencōs fessōs  
12 disiunxisse. Falce datā frondātor erat putātorque. Sī scālās portet, putēs  
13 Vertumnū lectūrum esse pōma. Mīles erat gladiō datō, piscātor erat harundine  
14 datā. Per multās figūrās poterat spectāre Pōmōnam.
- 15 Ille etiam positīs per tempora cānīs, anum adsimulāvit, et, innītēns baculō, in  
16 hortōs intrāvit. Deus pōma mīrātus est. Pauca oscula Pōmōnae dedit, quālia anus  
17 vērā numquam dedisset. In glaebā anus resēdit. Contrā erat ulmus speciōsa vīte  
18 ūvārū. Quam postquam pariter cum sociā vīte probāverat, anus falsa dixit: “Sī

### Commentary

**1–2 *quā nulla ... sollertius coluit*:** The antecedent of the relative pronoun is Pōmōna. It is in the ablative because it functions as an ablative of comparison after *sollertius*. Translate: *than whom no one of the wood nymphs of Latium cultivated gardens more skillfully*.

**6 *Nulla cupīdō Veneris erat*:** *Veneris* is an objective genitive and stands for romantic love rather than the goddess herself. In other words, Pomona is not interested in romance.

**14 *Per multās figūrās poterat spectāre Pomonam*:** Vertumnus uses his many disguises to create opportunities to see Pomona.

**16–17 *quālia ... dedisset*:** The word *quālia* refers to *oscula*.

**18 *Quam postquam*:** The antecedent of *quam* is *ulmus*. Disguised as the old woman, Vertumnus praises the elm with its companion-vine to allow him to bring up the subject of love and coupling.

**accessus, ūs m.:** approach, entrance, access  
**amnis, amnis m.:** river  
**arboreus, a, um:** of a tree  
**bibulus, a, um:** drinking freely, absorbing  
**compescō, compescere, compescui:** to  
 confine, check, restrain  
**contrā:** (adv.) on the opposite side  
**corbis, corbis m.:** basket  
**disiungō, disiungere, disiunxi, disiunctum:**  
 to disjoin, separate, unyoke  
**falx, falcis f.:** pruning-hook, scythe  
**fibra, ae f.:** fiber  
**frondātor, frondātoris m.:** one who prunes  
**hamadryas, hamadryadis f.:** a wood nymph  
**harundo, harundinis f.:** fishing rod  
**hortus, ī m.:** garden  
**iaculum, ī n.:** dart, javelin  
**innitor, inniti, innixus sum:** to lean upon,  
 rest on  
**irrigō, irrigāre, irrigāvi, irrigātum:** to  
 water, irrigate  
**Latīnus, a, um:** of Latium, the region which  
 includes Rome  
**luxuriēs, luxuriēi f.:** extravagance, excess  
**messor, messōris m.:** reaper, mower  
**pariter:** (adv.) equally

**paucus, a, um:** few, small in number  
**piscātor, piscātōris m.:** fisherman  
**Pōmōna, ae f.:** Pomona, goddess of  
 fruit-trees  
**Proca, ae m.:** Proca, a king of the Italian city  
 of Alba  
**prohibeō, prohibēre, prohibui,**  
**prohibitum:** to hold back, restrain, prevent  
**putātor, putātoris m.:** pruner of trees  
**quotiens:** (adv.) how often  
**recurvus, a, um:** turned back, bent  
**rūs, rūris n.:** country, land  
**scāla, ae f.:** ladder, flight of stairs  
**socius, a, um:** sharing, companion  
**sollertius:** (adv.) more skillfully  
**spatior, spatiārī, spatiātus sum:** to spread  
 out, expand  
**speciōsus, a, um:** beautiful, splendid  
**stimulus, ī m.:** spur, cattle prod  
**studiōsior, ius:** more diligent about, more  
 eager for (+ gen.)  
**ulmus, ī f.:** elm  
**Vertumnus, ī m.:** Vertumnus, god of the  
 cycle of the seasons  
**vērus, a, um:** true  
**vītis, vītis f.:** vine

- 19 trunca stāret caelebs sine vīte, nihil praeter frondēs habēret. Nisi haec vītis, quae in  
 20 ulmō requiēscit, cum arbore nupta foret, acclīnāta in terram iacēret. Tū tamen  
 21 exemplō huius arboris nōn tangeris, et amantēs fugis. Cupiās amāre, sint tibi plūrēs  
 22 amantēs quam Helenae vel coniugī Ulixis. Sed sī audīveris hanc anum, quae tē  
 23 plūs omnibus illīs amō, et cupīveris iungere tē bene, sēligēs tibi Vertumnum  
 24 socium torī. Deus iuvenis et pulcher est. Decus habet, et potest fingī in omnēs  
 25 formās. Miseresce Vertumnī, quī tē sōlam amat. Habē in memoriā Īphin et  
 26 Anaxaretē. Īphis Anaxaretē vīdit et amāvit, sed Anaxaretē, saevior fretō surgente  
 27 et dūrior ferrō, amantem spernēbat et inrīdēbat. Infēlix Īphis sēta vincula laqueī  
 28 religāvit, et caput īseruit, et dixit “Haec sēta tibi placēbunt, crūdēlis et impia  
 29 Anaxaretē!” Mox infēlix corpus iuvenis fauce ēlīsā pependit. Sī Anaxaretē eum  
 30 amāvisset, Īphis nōn mortuus esset. Dēpōne fastūs, precor, nymp̄ha, et cēde  
 31 amantī!”
- 32 Ubi deus nēquīquam haec ēdiderat, in formam iuvenis rediit et anīlia īnstrūmenta  
 33 dempsit. Vim parābat, sed vī nōn opus est. Nymp̄ha figūrā deī capta est, et mūtua  
 34 vulnera amōris sēnsit.

## Commentary

**19–20** *Nisi . . . foret*: *foret* is the third person singular imperfect subjunctive of *esse*.

**22** *quam Helenae vel coniugī Ulixis*: Helen was the most beautiful woman in the world, and Ulysses’ wife, Penelope, was pursued by over a hundred suitors while the hero was away at war.

**22–3** *quae . . . amō*: The relative pronoun *quae* refers to *anus*, but the verb is in the first person because Vertumnus is talking about himself in disguise.

**25** *Miseresce Vertumnī*: The verb *miserescere* takes a genitive object of the person or thing pitied.

**26–7** *saevior fretō surgente et dūrior ferrō*: The ablatives *fretō* and *ferrō* are ablatives of comparison.

**acclinātus, a, um:** leaning on

**Anaxaretē, ēs f.:** Anaxarete, a young woman  
from Cyprus

**caelebs, caelibis:** unmarried, uncoupled,  
single

**decus, decoris n.:** honor, glory, charm

**durior, ius:** harder, tougher

**fastus, ūs m.:** haughtiness, arrogance, pride

**faux, faucis f.:** throat, narrow entrance

**Helena, ae f.:** Helen of Troy, queen of Sparta  
**inserō, inserere, inseruī, insertum:** to put in,  
insert

**Īphis, Īphis m.:** Iphis, a young man from  
Cyprus

**morior, morī, mortuus sum:** to die

**mūtuus, a, um:** reciprocal, mutual

**nēquīquam:** (adv.) in vain, to no purpose

**precor, precārī, precātus sum:** to beg,  
entreat, pray

**pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum:** beautiful

**saevior, ius:** more savage

**sēligō, sēligere, sēlēgī, sēlectum:** to choose,  
select

**serō, serere, seruī, sertum:** to connect, bind  
together, weave

**truncus, ī m.:** trunk of a tree

**Ulixes, Ulixis m.:** Ulysses, the Greek hero  
Odysseus

## PLUPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE

The pluperfect subjunctive active is formed by adding personal endings to the perfect infinitive. The pluperfect subjunctive passive is formed by a combination of the perfect passive participle and the imperfect subjunctive of *esse*.

### *inserō, insere, inseruī, insertum: active*

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<i>1st person</i>	inseruissem	inseruissēmus
<i>2nd person</i>	inseruissēs	inseruissētis
<i>3rd person</i>	inseruisset	inseruissent

### *inserō, insere, inseruī, insertum: passive*

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<i>1st person</i>	insertum essem	inserta essēmus
<i>2nd person</i>	insertum essēs	inserta essētis
<i>3rd person</i>	insertum esset	inserta essent

### *sum, esse, fuī, futurum*

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<i>1st person</i>	fuissem	fuissēmus
<i>2nd person</i>	fuissēs	fuissētis
<i>3rd person</i>	fuisset	fuissent

## CONDITIONS

There are six kinds of conditional sentences in Latin. Three use verbs in the indicative, and three use verbs in the subjunctive. Conditions are often introduced by *sī* or *nisi*. They have two elements: a protasis, which is the premise, and an apodosis, which is the outcome.

- **Simple Fact Present:** Uses present indicative verbs in both the protasis and the apodosis. *Sī puerum amat, puella beata est. (If she loves the boy, the girl is happy.)*
- **Simple Fact Past:** Uses imperfect or perfect indicative verbs in both the protasis and the apodosis. *Sī puerum amābat, puella beata erat. (If she loved the boy, the girl was happy.)*
- **Future More Vivid:** Uses future or future perfect indicative in both the protasis and the apodosis. *Sī puerum amābit, puella beata erit. (If she loves [will love] the boy, the girl will be happy.)*

- **Future Less Vivid:** Uses present subjunctive in both the protasis and the apodosis. *Sī puerum amet, puella beata sit.* (If she should love the boy, the girl would be happy.)
- **Present Contrary to Fact:** Uses imperfect subjunctive in both the protasis and the apodosis. *Sī puerum amāret, puella beata foret.* (If she were loving the boy, the girl would be happy.)
- **Past Contrary to Fact:** Uses pluperfect subjunctive in both the protasis and the apodosis. *Sī puerum amāvisset, puella beata fuisset.* (If she had loved the boy, the girl would have been happy.)

In order to translate conditions correctly, it is essential to recognize which type of condition is at work. In the sentence *Sī trunca stāret caelebs sine vīte, nihil praeter frondēs habēret*, both verbs are in the imperfect subjunctive, so the sentence is a present contrary to fact condition and should be translated *If the trunk were standing uncoupled, without the vine, it would have nothing besides leaves*. In the sentence *Cupīās amāre, sint tibi plūrēs amantēs quam Helenae vel coniugī Ulixī*, both verbs are in the present subjunctive, so the sentence is a future less vivid condition and should be translated *Should you desire to love, there would be more lovers for you than for Helen or for the wife of Ulysses*. Note that in this condition, the protasis is not introduced by *sī* or *nisi*.

The story of Pomona and Vertumnus is one of many stories in the *Metamorphoses* in which a god operates in disguise. In the story about the contest between Arachne and Minerva, for example, Minerva is disguised as an old woman when she first approaches Arachne. In that same story, Arachne's tapestry depicts the male gods disguising themselves in order to deceive and rape both mortal and divine women. Ovid tells his audience that the frustrated Vertumnus prepares to use force against Pomona but does not end up doing so when Pomona unexpectedly falls in love with him upon seeing his true form. Thus, unlike many of Ovid's stories which involve disguise and deception, this story ends happily.

## 27 Quirinus

(*Met.* 14.805–51)

*After Romulus successfully establishes Rome, he is honored with deification. His wife Hersilia follows him.*

- 1 Rōmulus erat prīmus rēx Rōmānōrum, et Māvors erat pater Rōmulī. Rhēa Silvia, ā  
2 Māvorte rapta, mater rēgis Rōmānī erat. Dum Rōmulus iūra populō dat, Māvors  
3 casside positā tālibus verbīs parentem dīvōrumque hominumque adfātur: “Tempus  
4 adest, genitor. Cum rēs Rōmāna valeat, solve praemia quae prōmissa sunt mihi  
5 dignōque nepōtī tuō, et pōne Rōmulum in caelō. Quondam in conciliō deōrum  
6 (nam pia verba in animō notāvī) tū mihi dīxistī: ‘Erit ūnus quem tū in caelum  
7 tollēs.’ Summa tuōrum verbōrum sit rata!”
- 8 Omnipotēns pater adnuit, et āera nūbibus caecīs occuluit. Tonitrū et fulgure orbem  
9 terrārum terruit. Cum Grādīvus signa prōmissa sentīret, innīxus hastā currum,  
10 ductum equīs tēmōne cruentō pressīs, conscendit, et ictū verberis increpuit. Lapsus  
11 prōnus per āera in summō colle nemorōsī Palātīnī constitit. Rōmulum reddentem  
12 iam iūra Rōmānīs abstulit. Corpus mortāle per aurās tenuēs dilāpsum est, ut glāns  
13 plumbea missa lātā fundā solet intābescere in mediō caelō. Rōmulus faciem  
14 digniorem pulvīnāribus altīs habuit. Quālis est forma Quirīnī. Rōmulus est  
15 Quirīnus, novus deus!

### Commentary

**4** *Cum rēs Rōmāna valeat*: *rēs Rōmāna* means *the Roman state*.

**7** *Summa . . . sit rata*: Jussive subjunctive. The participle *rata* is used here in a passive sense to mean *ratified, fixed, or settled*, even though it is from a deponent verb. Translate: *May the sum of your words be ratified*.

**10** *ductum equīs tēmōne cruentō pressīs*: Ovid describes the yoke of the chariot as bloody to illustrate the ferocity of the horses.

**12–13** *ut glāns plumbea missa lātā fundā*: *lātā fundā* is an ablative of means.

**14** *digniorem pulvīnāribus altīs*: *dignior, ius* (the comparative of *dignus, a, um*) can be followed by an ablative or a genitive. Romulus is undergoing a transformation from human to god and is thus worthy of divine couches.

**adfor, adfārī, adfātus sum:** to speak to,  
address

**adnuō, adnuere, adnuī, adnūtum:** to nod,  
give assent

**collis, collis m.:** hill

**dignior, ius:** more worthy

**dīlābor, dīlābī, dīlapsus sum:** to fall down,  
fall apart, perish

**dūcō, dūcere, duxī, ductum:** to lead

**fulgur, fulguris n.:** lightning

**funda, ae f.:** sling

**glāns, glandis f.:** ball of lead, bullet

**Grādīvus, ī m.:** Gradivus, epithet of Mars  
meaning “He who walks in battle”

**increpō, increpere, increpuī, increpitum:** to  
make a noise, resound

**intābescō, intābescere, intābuī:** to melt  
away, dissolve

**nemorōsus, a, um:** wooded

**Palātīnus, a, um:** of the Palatine, one of the  
seven hills of Rome

**pulvīnar, pulvīnāris n.:** cushioned seat, seat  
of honor

**Quirīnus, ī m.:** Quirinus, a god with whom  
the deified Romulus was identified

**quondam:** (adv.) once, formerly

**reddō, reddere, reddidī, redditum:** to give  
back, restore, return to

**reor, rērī, ratus sum:** to calculate, judge,  
reckon

**rēs Rōmāna, rei Rōmānae f.:** Roman  
state

**Rhēa Silvia, Rhēae Silviae f.:** Rhea  
Silvia, the mother of Romulus and  
Remus

**Rōmānus, a, um:** of Rome

**Rōmulus, ī m.:** Romulus, the first king of  
Rome

**summa, ae f.:** a summary, most important  
point, sum total

**tēmō, tēmōnis m.:** beam, yoke

**tenuis, e:** thin, fine

**tonitrus, ūs m.:** thunder

**valeō, valēre, valuī, valitum:** to be strong,  
be healthy

**verber, verberis n.:** lash, whip

- 16 Coniunx Rōmulī, Hersilia, virum ut āmissum flet, cum Iūnō Īrin dēscendere ad  
 17 Hersiliam et referre sīc sua mandāta imperat. Īris pāret, et dēlapsa per arcūs pictōs  
 18 in terram Hersiliam iussīs verbīs compellat. “Ō mātrōna, dignissima fuisse ante  
 19 coniunx tantī virī, nunc esse coniunx Quirīnī, siste tuōs flētūs. Sī vidēre coniugem  
 20 cupis, mēcum lūcum in colle Quirīnī pete quī viret et templum rēgis Rōmānī  
 21 obumbrat.” Hersilia vix tollēns lūmina dīcit: “Ō dea (nam certa dīva es), dūc, ō  
 22 dūc, et offer ōra coniugis mihi! Cum mē terreās, cupiō tamen vidēre virum. Sī fāta  
 23 dederint mē posse vidēre semel ōra coniugis, mē accēpisse caelum fatēbor!”
- 24 Sine morā, ingreditur collem Rōmuleum cum deā. Ibi sīdus lapsum ab aethere  
 25 dēcidit in terrās. Crīnibus ā lūmine sīderis flagrantibus, Hersilia cum sīdere in  
 26 aurās cessit. Conditor urbis Rōmānae hanc manibus nōtīs excēpit, et priscum  
 27 nōmen pariter cum corpore mūtāvit. Hora vocātur, quae nunc dea Quirīnō iuncta  
 28 est.

### Commentary

**16** *cum Iūnō Īrin dēscendere*: Īrin is accusative singular.

**18–19** *Ō mātrōna, dignissima fuisse ante coniunx tantū virī, nunc esse coniunx Quirīnī*: Understand *dignissima* with both infinitive constructions.

**21** *Hersilia vix tollēns lūmina*: *lūmina* means *eyes* here.

**23** *dederint mē posse vidēre*: Understand *dederint* to mean *grant* here. Translate: *If the fates will have granted . . .*

**23** *mē accēpisse caelum fatēbor*: Hersilia means that she will be very happy, but Ovid’s language also foreshadows her transformation into a star.

**25–26** *Crīnibus ā lūmine sīderis flagrantibus . . . cessit*: *Crīnibus flagrantibus* is an ablative absolute. After her hair bursts into flames, Hersilia rises up into the air with the star.

**compellō, compellāre, compellāvī,**  
**compellātum:** to address, accost  
**dēcidō, dēcidere, dēcidī:** to fall down,  
fall away  
**dēlābor, dēlābī, dēlapsus sum:** to glide  
down, fall down, sink  
**flētus, ūs m.:** tears, weeping  
**Hersilia, ae f.:** Hersilia, wife of  
Romulus  
**Hora, ae f.:** Hora, the name of deified  
Hersilia

**ingredior, ingredi, ingressus sum:** to step in,  
enter, walk  
**Īris, Īris f.:** Iris, goddess of the rainbow and  
messenger of the gods  
**obumbrō, obumbrāre, obumbrāvī,**  
**obumbrātum:** to overshadow, cover  
**priscus, a, um:** old, ancient  
**Rōmuleus, a, um:** of Romulus  
**sistō, sistere, stitī:** to stand, cause to stand  
still, stop  
**vireō, virēre, viruī:** to be green

## CUM CLAUSES

*Cum* clauses feature verbs in either the indicative or the subjunctive mood. When the verb is in the indicative, the *cum* clause is a temporal clause and *cum* should be translated *when*. When the verb is in the subjunctive, the *cum* clause is one of three types. In a circumstantial *cum* clause, *cum* should be translated *when*, and the clause describes the circumstances under which something happens rather than the time at which it happens (which would be the case with a verb in the indicative). In a causal *cum* clause, *cum* should be translated *since*. In a concessive *cum* clause, *cum* should be translated *although*. When you encounter a *cum* clause which features a verb in the subjunctive, you have to decide which type of clause is represented. In the sentence *Cum rēs Rōmāna valeat, solve praemia quae prōmissa sunt mihi dignōque nepōi tuō, et pōne Rōmulum in caelō*, the *cum* clause is best interpreted as a causal clause and the *cum* should be translated *since*. In the sentence *Cum mē terreās, cupiō tamen vidēre virum*, the *tamen* indicates that the *cum* clause is concessive. Thus, *cum* should be translated *although*.

Roman history traditionally is divided into three main periods, and the earliest of these is a period in which Rome is ruled by seven kings. The period starts in 753 BCE when Rome is founded by Romulus, and runs until the last king is expelled in 510–509 BCE. Romulus' name simply means "man of Rome," and the king is mythical rather than historical. According to myth, Rhea Silvia is impregnated by the god Mars and subsequently gives birth to both Romulus and his twin brother Remus. When their birth is discovered, the twins are placed into a basket and set afloat on the Tiber River. The basket washes up on a shore, and the twins are nursed by a she-wolf until they are found. Eventually, they restore their ousted grandfather to the throne of Alba Longa and set out to establish a new city. Because of rivalry between the brothers, Romulus kills Remus and becomes the first king of Rome. The deification in this story anticipates the apotheosis of Julius Caesar at the end of the *Metamorphoses*.



# Taylor & Francis

Taylor & Francis Group

<http://taylorandfrancis.com>

## 28 Cīpus

(*Met.* 15.547–621)

*When Cīpus realizes that horns have grown from his head and that he stands to become king of Rome, he exiles himself from the city to avoid the office.*

- 1 Cīpus Rōmānus cui tȳrannis odiōsa foret erat. Sīc nēmō stupuit magis quam Cīpus  
2 cum sē vīdit in undā flūmineā. Ille in undā sua cornua vīdit, et, crēdēns imāginem  
3 esse falsam, saepe digitōs ad frontem referēbat. Quae vīdit, tetigit. Nec monstrō  
4 restitit, sed, ut victor ab hoste domitō remeābat, tollēns oculōs et bracchia ad  
5 caelum dixit: “Superī, quidquid istō monstrō portenditur, seu laetum est, laetum  
6 patriae populōque Quirīnī sit, seu mināx, mināx mihi sit.”
- 7 Āram herbōsam ē caespite viridī facit, et deōs ignibus odōrātīs plācat. Vīnum in  
8 paterīs dat, et trepidantia exta bidentium mactātārum consulit. Quae simul haruspex  
9 Tyrrhēnus adspicit, magna mōlīmīna rērum in illīs videt, nōn tamen manifesta.  
10 Cum vērō oculōs ad cornua Cīpī tollit, dīcit: “Ō rēx! Haec cornua sunt quae  
11 virum rēgem faciant! Tibi enim, tibi, Cīpe, tuīsque cornibus hic locus et arcēs  
12 Latiae pārēbunt. Tū modo morās rumpe, et appropriā intrāre portās patentēs! Sīc  
13 fāta iubent. Nam, receptus in urbe, rēx eris, et tūtus sceptrō potiēris.”
- 14 Ille pedem refert, et, āvertēns faciem torvam ā moenibus urbis, dīcit: “Procul! Dī  
15 procul rēgēs pellant! Iustius multō ego exsul aevum agam. Rōma mē rēgem nē

### Commentary

- 1 *cui tȳrannis odiōsus foret*: *foret* is the same as *esset*, the imperfect subjunctive of *esse*.  
3 *Quae vīdit, tetigit*: The antecedent of *quae* is *cornua*.  
8–9 *Quae simul haruspex Tyrrhēnus adspicit*: The antecedent of *quae* is *exta*. Cīpus has consulted a haruspex to determine what is indicated by his new horns.  
14 *Ille pedem refert*: Cīpus takes a step backwards.  
15 *Iustius multō*: *multō* is an ablative of degree of difference with the comparative adverb *iustius*. Translate: *more justly by much*.

**approperō, approperāre, approperāvī, approperātum:** to hasten

**āvertō, āvertere, āvertī, āversum:** to turn away, remove, avert

**Cīpus, ī m.:** Cipus, an early Roman praetor

**domō, domāre, domuī, domitum:** to tame, subdue

**exsul, exsulis m. or f.:** an exile, banished person

**exta, extōrum n. pl.:** the entrails of an animal

**flūmineus, a, um:** of a river

**haruspex, haruspiciis m.:** a soothsayer who prophesies by looking at entrails

**herbōsus, a, um:** grassy

**iustus:** (adv.) more justly

**Latius, a, um:** of Latium

**mactō, mactāre, mactāvī, mactātum:** to slay, sacrifice

**nēmō, nēminis m. or f.:** no one, nobody

**odiōsus, a, um:** hateful, despised

**odōrō, odōrāre, odōrāvī, odōrātum:** to make odorous, make sweet-smelling

**patera, ae f.:** a shallow dish, saucer

**plācō, plācāre, plācāvī, plācātum:** to soothe, calm

**porta, ae f.:** a gate, door

**portendō, portendere, portendī,**

**portentum:** to indicate, predict

**remeō, remeāre, remeāvī, remeātum:** to return, go back

**Rōma, ae f.:** Rome

**trepidō, trepidāre, trepidāvī, trepidātum:** to be agitated

**tȳrannis, tȳrannidis f.:** tyranny, despotic rule

**Tyrrhēnus, a, um:** of Etruria, Etruscan

**vīnum, ī n.:** wine

16 videat!” Verbīs dictīs extemplō populumque senātumque convocat; ante tamen  
 17 cornua laurō pācālī vēlat. Priscōs deōs precātur, et dīcit: “Ūnus est hīc, quī, nisi  
 18 vōs hunc ex urbe pepuleritis, rēx erit. Hunc dīcam nōn nōmine sed signō. Cornua  
 19 in fronte gerit! Augur indicat vōbīs, sī Rōmam intrāverit, famulāria iūra datūrum  
 20 esse. Ille quidem irrumpere portās apertās potuit, sed ego obstitī, quamvīs nēmō est  
 21 coniunctior mihi illō. Prohibēte virum ab urbe, Rōmānī, vel, sī dignus erit, aut  
 22 vincite catēnīs gravibus, aut finīte metum morte tyrannī fātālis!”

23 Per confūsa verba vulgī ūna vōx ēminet: “Quis ille est?” Cīvēs frontēs spectant, et  
 24 cornua praedicta quaerunt. Cīpus dīcit: “Quem poscitis, habētis,” et, corōnā laurī  
 25 demptā, tempora praesignia cornibus exhibet. Omnēs oculōs dēmittunt, et gemitum  
 26 dant. Nec patientēs illum ulterius carēre honōre, impōnunt corōnam laurī. At  
 27 procerēs, quoniam intrāre mūrōs vetārīs, Cīpe, rūs magnum tibi honōrātō dant.  
 28 Cornua in aerātīs postibus portārum insculpunt, mansūra per longum aevum. Cīpus  
 29 vir quem Rōmānī ament est.

## Commentary

**19–20 sī Rōmam intrāverit . . . datūrum esse:** This is a future more vivid condition in indirect statement after *indicat*.

**21 coniunctior mihi illō:** *illō* is ablative of comparison after the comparative *coniunctior*. Translate: *more connected to me than that man*.

**22 aut finīte metum morte tyrannī fātālis:** *morte* is an ablative of means.

**26–7 At procerēs . . . rūs magnum tibi honōrātō dant:** Ovid addresses Cipus directly here, making the story more vivid for his audience. *rūs* refers to an estate in the country rather than the country itself.

**aerātus, a, um:** made of bronze

**augur, auguris m. or f.:** augur, soothsayer

**confundō, confundere, confūdī, confūsum:**  
to pour together, mix up

**coniunctior, ius:** more connected, more  
joined

**convocō, convocāre, convocāvī,**

**convocātum:** to call together, assemble

**ēmineō, ēminēre, ēminuī:** to project, stand  
out

**famulāris, e:** relating to slaves

**fātālis, e:** fated, destined

**finiō, finīre, finīvī, finītum:** to put an end to,  
limit

**gemitus, ūs m.:** groan

**indicō, indicāre, indicāvī, indicātum:** to  
make known, show

**insculpō, insculpere, insculpsī, insculptum:**  
to cut into, engrave

**irrupō, irrumpere, irrūpī, irruptum:** to  
break in, rush in

**pācālis, e:** peaceful

**postis, postis m.:** a door post

**praedīcō, praedīcere, praedixī,**

**praedictum:** to prophesy, foretell

**senātus, ūs m.:** the senate

**vetō, vetāre, vetuī, vetitum:** to forbid,  
prohibit

## RELATIVE CLAUSES OF CHARACTERISTIC

Relative clauses of characteristic are subjunctive clauses introduced by relative pronouns. Whereas a relative clause which contains a verb in the indicative mood offers actual information about the antecedent of the relative pronoun, a relative clause of characteristic offers less concrete information about its antecedent. For example, in the sentence *Cipus Rōmānus cui tȳrannis odiōsa foret erat*, the relative clause *cui tȳrannis odiōsa foret* contains a verb in the imperfect subjunctive and is a relative clause of characteristic. The sentence should be translated *Cipus was **the type of** Roman man for whom tyranny was hateful*, as opposed to *Cipus was a Roman man for whom tyranny was hateful*. The information provided by the clause is more general than that provided by a relative clause which uses a verb in the indicative. Similarly, the sentence *Cipus vir quem Rōmānī ament est* should be translated *Cipus is **the sort of** man whom the Romans love*.

The story of Cipus, who is honored for refusing to become a Roman king even though he is given the opportunity, captures the Romans' negative attitude towards monarchy. Although early Roman kings such as Romulus and Numa Pompilius were regarded with reverence, in general Romans celebrated their republican government and opposed the idea of absolute rule. Julius Caesar was assassinated by men who feared his status as dictator. Thus, when establishing himself as the first emperor, Augustus was careful to construct an image of himself which did not suggest kingship.



# Taylor & Francis

Taylor & Francis Group

<http://taylorandfrancis.com>

## 29 Aesculapius

(*Met.* 15.622–744)

*When a deadly plague strikes the city, the Romans invite the god of medicine to come to Rome from Epidaurus.*

- 1 Quondam dīra luēs aurās Rōmānās vitiāverat, et corpora pallida morbō squālēbant.
- 2 Virī, fessī fūneribus, mortālia temptāmenta esse nihil cernunt et artēs medentium
- 3 nōn posse. Rōmānī sē quid luem fēcerit rogant, sed nōn sciunt quae causa fuerit vel
- 4 quid iuvet vel quōs consulere dēbeant. Auxilium caeleste petunt, et Delphōs,
- 5 tenentēs mediam humum orbis, adeunt. Ōrāculum Phoebī petunt. Ōrant ut deus
- 6 mala urbis finiat. Et locus et laurus et pharetra, quam deus ipse habet, intremiscunt.
- 7 Cortīna ex adytō hanc vōcem reddit, et pectora pavefacta movet: “Quod hinc
- 8 petitis, Rōmānī, petite nunc in aliō locō. Nec opus est Phoebō, sed Phoebēiō nātō.
- 9 Īte cum bonīs avibus prōlemque meam arcessite.”

### Commentary

**1 *Quondam dīra . . . squālēbant*:** Ovid begins his account with a vivid description of poisoned air and pale bodies wasted by the disease. Ancient Greek medical texts discuss the importance of the quality of air for health.

**2–3 *et artēs medentium nōn posse*:** This accusative-infinitive construction is still in indirect statement after *cernunt*, and *posse* is used here to mean *to be effective*.

**5 *tenentēs mediam humum orbis*:** The sanctuary of Delphi was thought to be located at the center of the earth.

**6 *Et locus et laurus et pharetra, quam deus ipse habet, intremiscunt*:** Ovid refers to the sanctuary’s statue of the god and its adornments here.

**7 *Cortīna ex adytō hanc vōcem reddit*:** The priestess of Apollo sat on a large tripod when prophesying. The tripod stands for the priestess herself.

**8 *Nec opus est Phoebō*:** The construction *opus est* takes an ablative of the thing needed.

**adeō, adīre, adī, aditum:** to go or come to, approach

**adytum, ī n.:** the innermost area of a temple

**arcessō, arcessere, arcessivī, arcessitum:** to summon, call to a place

**auxilium, ī n.:** help, assistance

**cernō, cernere, crēvī, crētum:** to separate, distinguish, perceive

**cortīna, ae f.:** cauldron, tripod

**Delphī, ōrum m. pl.:** Delphi, a place famous for Apollo's oracle

**dīrus, a, um:** horrible, dire

**intremiscō, intremiscere:** to tremble

**luēs, luis f.:** disease, pestilence, plague

**medēns, medentis m.:** a physician

**morbus, ī m.:** disease, illness

**pallidus, a, um:** pale

**pavefactus, a, um:** terrified

**Phoebēius, a, um:** of Phoebus, of Apollo

**squāleō, squālere, squālūi:** to be

stiff, be dirty

**temptāmentum, ī n.:** a trial, attempt

- 10 Postquam senātus verba deī accipit, quam urbem filius Phoebī colat explōrat.  
 11 Virōs ad Epidauria litora mittit. Cum virī missī Epidauria litora tangunt, adeunt  
 12 concilium Graiōsque patrēs. Rōmānī ōrant ut Epidauriī patrēs deum Rōmam  
 13 mittant, qui fūnera Rōmānōrum finiat. Sententiae patrum dissident et variant. Pars  
 14 putat auxilium nōn dēbere negārī, sed dēbere multī deum suum nōn ēmittere putant.
- 15 Dum dubitant, nox umbrās orbī terrārum inducit. Rōmānī in cubiculō dormiunt. In  
 16 somniīs Rōmānōrum deus opifer consistere ante torum vidētur. Deus vidētur  
 17 ēmittere tālia verba: “Pōne metum! Epidaurum relinquam, et veniam Rōmam.  
 18 Perspice hunc serpentem, quī baculum nexibus ambit. Vertar in hunc, sed maior  
 19 erō.” Extemplō deus cum vōce somnōque abit.
- 20 Aurōra ignēs sīdereōs fugat, et procerēs, nōn scientēs quid agant, conveniunt ad  
 21 templum deī. Procerēs ōrant deum ut indicet signīs caelestibus in quā urbe ipse  
 22 esse cupiat. Vix verbīs dictīs, deus, in formā serpentis, sībila praenuntia mittit, et  
 23 adventū suō signumque ārāsque forēsque fastīgiaque aurea movet. Turba territa  
 24 pavet, sed sacerdos nūmen cognōvit. Clāmat: “Deus est! Deus est! Ō pulcherrime  
 25 Aesculāpī, populōs colentēs tua sacra iuvā!” Omnēs nūmen venerantur. Rōmānī  
 26 deum auxilium rogant. Hīs deus adnuit. Tum deus gradibus dēlābitur, et adsuētum  
 27 templum salūtat. Inde ingēns serpēns tendit per mediam urbem ad portum, et  
 28 corpus in rate Rōmānā pōnit. Nāvis onus nūminis sentit, pressa gravitatē deī.  
 29 Rōmānī gaudent, et retinācula nāvis solvunt.
- 30 Nāvis ad portum Tiberīnum nāvigat, et hūc omnis turba populī (mātrēsque  
 31 patrēsque fēminaeque quae ignēs Vestae servant) ruit, et deum laetō clāmōre  
 32 salūtant. Ut cita nāvis per undās dūcitur, tūra in ārīs super rīpās factīs aurās  
 33 odōrant. Iam deus urbem Rōmānam intrat. Serpēns ērigitur et collum movet,  
 34 circumspiciēns sēdēs sibi aptās. Flūmen circumfluum in geminās partēs scinditur:  
 35 hīc insula Tiberīna est. Hūc anguis dīvus sē ā nāve confert, et speciē caelestī  
 36 resumptā finem lūctibus impōnit veniūque salūtifera urbī.

## Commentary

**13 qui fūnera Rōmānōrum finiat:** This is a relative clause of purpose, a relative clause with a subjunctive verb which also indicates why something is done. Translate: *so that the god will put an end to the funerals of the Romans.*

**19 Extemplō deus cum vōce somnōque abit:** In other words, the vision of the god leaves along with his voice, and the Romans who were dreaming wake up.

**21 ut indicet signīs caelestibus:** *signīs caelestibus* is ablative of means.

**22–3 Vix verbīs dictīs, deus, in formā serpentis ... movet:** As the god approaches, his powerful presence causes everything to shake. *signum* refers to the sanctuary’s statue.

**25 populōs colentēs tua sacra iuvā:** *tua sacra* is the direct object of *colentēs*.

**adventus, ūs m.:** an arrival

**Aesculāpius, ī m.:** Aesculapius, god of healing

**ambiō, ambīre, ambīvī, ambītum:** to go around, surround

**circumfluus, a, um:** flowing around

**citus, a, um:** quick, speedy

**conferō, conferre, contulī, conlātum:** to bring together, collect, bring to a place

**consistō, consistere, constitī, constitum:** to put oneself in a place, take a stand, be posted

**conveniō, convenīre, convēnī, conventum:** to meet, come together

**cubiculum, ī n.:** bedchamber

**dissideō, dissidēre, dissēdī, dissesum:** to be different, disagree

**dormiō, dormīre, dormīvī, dormītum:** to sleep

**Epidaurius, a, um:** of Epidaurus, a town in Greece

**Epidaurus, ī f.:** Epidaurus, a town famous for the sanctuary of Aesculapius

**erigō, erigere, ērexī, ērēctum:** to lift up, raise, excite

**explōrō, explōrāre, explōrāvī, explōrātum:** to search out, investigate

**flūmen, flūminis n.:** a flowing, river

**Graius, a, um:** of Greece

**indūcō, indūcere, induxī, inductum:** to bring in, introduce, draw over a surface (+ dat.)

**insula, ae f.:** island

**nāvis, nāvis f.:** ship

**onus, oneris n.:** burden, load

**opifer, opifera, opiferum:** bringing aid, helpful

**perspiciō, perspicere, perspexī, perspectum:** to see through, observe closely

**praenuntius, a, um:** foretelling

**rēsūmō, rēsūmere, rēsumpsī, rēsumptum:** to take again, resume

**retinācula, ōrum n. pl.:** rope, cable

**sacerdōs, sacerdotis m. or f.:** priest, priestess

**salūtifer, salūtiferī m.:** bringer of health

**sīdereus, a, um:** belonging to the stars

**somnium, ī n.:** dream

**Tiberīnus, a, um:** of the Tiber River

**veneror, venerārī, venerātus sum:** to ask, entreat with reverence, worship

**Vesta, ae f.:** Vesta, goddess of the hearth

## INDIRECT QUESTION

Like an indirect statement, an indirect question is a representation of indirect speech; however, an indirect question is formed as a subordinate clause with a verb in the subjunctive rather than as a construction which uses an accusative and infinitive. Indirect questions are introduced by interrogative words such as *quis* (*who*), *quid* (*what*), *cūr* (*why*), *ubi* (*where*), or *quandō* (*when*), for example, and they usually follow verbs of speaking, thinking, or sensing. In the sentence *Rōmānī sē quid luem fēcerit rogant, sed nōn sciunt quae causa fuerit vel quid iuvet vel quōs consulere dēbeant*, the clauses *quid luem fēcerit*, *quae causa fuerit*, *quid iuvet*, and *quōs consulere dēbeant* are all indirect questions. The sentence should be translated *The Romans ask themselves what caused the plague, but they do not know what the cause was, what would help, or whom they ought to consult*.

The panhellenic sanctuary at Epidaurus was famous as a place of healing. It was dedicated to the god Aesclepius, the Greek equivalent of Aesculapius, and the sanctuary included temples as well as a large hall for sleeping, a theater, and places for athletic activities. Those seeking cures would spend the night in the sanctuary hoping for some kind of dream-visitation from the god, an experience known as *incubation*. Snakes figured prominently in the cult, and several accounts exist of the god being taken from Epidaurus in the form of a snake to assist with epidemics in other places. Licks from sacred dogs living in the sanctuary also were important in the healing process. Inscriptions found at the sanctuary celebrate many miraculous cures.



# Taylor & Francis

Taylor & Francis Group

<http://taylorandfrancis.com>

## 30 The apotheosis of Caesar

(*Met.* 15.745–870)

*When Julius Caesar is assassinated, Venus takes his soul in the form of a comet to join the gods in the vault of heaven.*

- 1 Aesculāpius advena Rōmam nāvigandō aequora vēnit, sed Caesar est deus in urbe  
2 suā. Quem praecipuum Marte togāque bella finīta triumphīs et rēs domī gestae in  
3 stellam comantem nōn vertērunt magis quam sua prōgeniēs. Neque enim dē āctīs  
4 Caesaris ullum maius opus est quam quod pater huius Augustī fuit. Domuisse  
5 aequoreōs Britannōs, ēgissee navēs per septemflua flūmina Nīlī papȳriferī, meruisse  
6 multōs sed ēgissee aliquōs triumphōs sunt nōn maiōra quam genuisse tantum virum.  
7 Ille igitur deus faciendus erat, nē Augustus crētus e mortālī sēmīne foret.
- 8 Cum Venus Caesarem faciendum esse deum vīdit, trīste lētum pontificī suō parārī  
9 quoque vīdit. Dea metū palluit. Omnibus dīvīs dixit: “Adspice quantā mōle  
10 insidiae parentur, quantāque fraude caput Caesaris petātur. Cernitis scelerātōs  
11 ensēs acuī. Quōs prohibēte, precor! Repellite facinus! Nē exstinguite flammās

### Commentary

**2–3 *Quem praecipuum Marte togāque . . . prōgeniēs*:** The antecedent of *quem* is *Caesar*. *Marte* and *togā* are ablatives of specification after *praecipuum*, standing for war and peace. *bella*, *rēs*, and *prōgeniēs* are all subjects of *vertērunt*. *domī* is locative and should be translated *at home*. Ovid is saying that the fact Caesar was the father of Augustus was the primary reason for his deification.

**3–4 *Neque enim dē āctīs Caesaris . . . fuit*:** *ullum maius opus est*, taken with *neque*, means *there is no greater work*. *quod* should be translated *the fact that* here.

**4–6 *Domuisse aequoreōs Britannōs . . . virum*:** The infinitive phrases are the subjects of *sunt*.

**7 *Ille igitur deus faciendus erat*:** A passive periphrastic. Translate: *That man had to become (be made) a god*. Ovid praises Augustus by suggesting that he could not have been born from mortal seed.

**8–9 *Cum Venus Caesarem faciendum esse deum vīdit . . . vīdit*:** Ovid refers to the assassination of Julius Caesar in 44 BCE. Among many other offices he held, Julius Caesar served as pontifex maximus.

**10–11 *Cernitis scelerātōs ensēs acuī*:** *acuī* is a present passive infinitive.

**11 *Quōs prohibēte*:** The antecedent of *quōs* is *ensēs*.

**acuō, acuere, acui, acūtum:** to sharpen

**aequoreus, a, um:** surrounded by sea

**Augustus, ī m.:** Augustus, the first Roman emperor

**Britanni, ōrum m. pl.:** the Britons

**Caesar, Caesaris m.:** Julius Caesar, Roman general and dictator

**gignō, gignere, genui, genitum:** to produce, give birth to

**mereō, merēre, merui, meritum:** to deserve, earn

**mōles, mōlis f.:** weight, bulk

**palleō, pallere, pallui:** to be pale, grow pale

**papȳrifer, papȳriferā, papȳriferum:**

papyrus-bearing

**pontifex, pontificis m.:** a priest

**praecipuus, a, um:** peculiar, excellent, distinguished

**stella comans, stellae comantis f.:** a hairy star, a comet

**toga, ae f.:** toga, garment worn by Roman men

**triumphus, ī m.:** a triumphal procession, victory

12 Vestae caede sacerdotis!” Anxia Venus tālia verba iēcit, et superōs mōvit,  
 13 quamquam superī nōn possunt rumpere ferrea dēcrēta veterum sorōrum. Nōn erat  
 14 spēs servandī virum.

15 Superī tamen signa haud incerta futūrī lūctūs dant. Ferunt arma crepitantia inter  
 16 nigrās nūbēs terribilēsque tubās cornuaque audīta in caelō praemonuisse nefās.  
 17 Saepe facēs in caelō ardēre vīsae sunt. Saepe guttae cruentae inter nimbōs  
 18 cecidērunt. In mīlle locīs Stygius bībō tristia ōmina dedit. Ferunt canēs in forō  
 19 ululāvisse et umbrās silentium errāvisse. Praemonitūs deōrum vincere īnsidiās  
 20 malās fātaque ventūra nōn potuērunt. Gladii in cūriam Caesaris necandī causā  
 21 lātī sunt.

22 Tum vērō Cytherēa pectus percussit, et vėlāre Caesarem nūbe mōlīta est. Tālibus  
 23 verbīs Iuppiter Venerī dixit: “Nāta, parāsne sōla movēre insuperābile fātum?  
 24 Nātus tuus, Cytherēa, sua tempora quae terrae dēbuit complēvit. Tū et nātus  
 25 Caesaris, Augustus, faciētis ut Caesar deus in caelum accēdat et in templīs colātur.  
 26 Pāce omnibus terrīs datā Augustus animum ad cīvīlia iūra vertet; iustissimus auctor  
 27 lēgēs feret. Exemplō suō mōrēs reget. Intereā fac hanc animam, raptam dē corpore  
 28 caesō Caesaris, stellam, ut semper dīvus Iūlius Capitōlium nostrum forumque dē  
 29 excelsō templō prospectet.”

30 Vix pater dixerat, cum Venus in mediā sēde senatūs constitit, et, nōn passūra  
 31 animam Caesaris solvī in āera, animam ēripuit. In caelestia astra tulit. Ut tulit,  
 32 Venus animam ignescere sēnsit. Ēmīsīt sinū, et anima altius lūnā volāvit. Trahēns  
 33 crīnem flammiferum nunc micat stella.

## Commentary

**13 *quamquam superī... veterum sorōrum*:** The *old sisters* are the Fates, who determine all that will happen.

**15–16 *Ferunt ... praemonuisse nefās*:** *Ferunt* here means *they say* and introduces indirect statement.

**24–5 *Tū et nātus Caesaris ... colātur*:** The *ut* clause follows *faciētis* and indicates what will be accomplished.

**30–1 *nōn passūra animam Caesaris solvī in āera*:** *passūra* describes Venus and is followed by the accusative-infinitive construction.

**32 *et anima altius lūnā volāvit*:** *lūnā* is an ablative of comparison after the comparative adverb *altius*.

**altius:** (adv.) higher

**anxius, a, um:** anxious, nervous

**astrum, ī n.:** star

**caedō, caedere, cecidī, caesum:** to cut, strike, kill

**Capitōlium, ī n.:** the temple of Jupiter on the Tarpeian Rock

**causā:** (+ gen., always after its object) for the sake of

**civilis, e:** civil, relating to a citizen

**crepitō, crepitāre, crepitāvī, crepitātum:** to rattle, crash, clatter

**cūria, ae f.:** the senate-house in Rome

**Cytherēus, a, um:** of Cythera, epithet of Venus

**dēcrētum, ī m.:** a decree

**excelsus, a, um:** lofty, high

**exstinguō, exstinguere, exstinxi, extinctum:** to put out, extinguish

**flammiifer, flammifera,**

**flammiiferum:** carrying flames

**forum, ī n.:** public space in Rome, center for business and politics

**iaciō, iacere, iēcī, iactum:** to throw

**ignescō, ignescere:** to catch fire

**incertus, a, um:** uncertain, doubtful

**insuperābilis, e:** insurmountable

**Iūlius, ī m.:** Julius Caesar

**iustissimus, a, um:** most just

**mōlior, mōlirī, mōlitus sum:** to set in motion, work at

**nefās n.:** (indecl.) a crime, abomination

**ōmen, ōminis n.:** sign, omen

**praemoneō, praemonēre, praemonuī, praemonitum:** to warn beforehand

**praemonitus, ūs m.:** prediction, warning

**prospectō, prospectāre, prospectāvī, prospectātum:** to gaze out at, look out on

**repellō, repellere, reppulī, repulsum:** to drive back, drive away

**sinus, ūs m.:** a bending, fold, pocket, lap

## GERUNDS AND GERUNDIVES

A gerund is a verbal noun which only has forms in the neuter singular. There is no nominative form for the gerund; instead, the infinitive is used as a subject. The gerundive is a verbal adjective which is equivalent to the future passive participle. Because it is an adjective, it has masculine, feminine, and neuter endings in the singular and plural. The declensions of the gerund and the gerundive for *necō*, *nēcāre*, *nēcāvī*, *nēcātum* follow.

### Gerund

<i>Nominative</i>	XXX	XXX
<i>Genitive</i>	necandī	of killing
<i>Dative</i>	necandō	to/for killing
<i>Accusative</i>	necandum	killing
<i>Ablative</i>	necandō	by, with killing

### Gerundive (*to be killed*)

	<i>Singular</i>			<i>Plural</i>		
	<i>Masculine</i>	<i>Feminine</i>	<i>Neuter</i>	<i>Masculine</i>	<i>Feminine</i>	<i>Neuter</i>
<i>Nominative</i>	necandus	necanda	necandum	necandī	necandae	necanda
<i>Genitive</i>	necandī	necandae	necandī	necandōrum	necandārum	necandōrum
<i>Dative</i>	necandō	necandae	necandō	necandīs	necandīs	necandīs
<i>Accusative</i>	necandum	necandam	necandum	necandōs	necandās	necanda
<i>Ablative</i>	necandō	necandā	necandō	necandīs	necandīs	necandīs

Latin uses both gerunds and gerundives, but there is a general preference for gerundives, even when an active meaning is sought. In the sentence *Aesculāpius advena Rōmam nāvigandō aequora vēnit*, *nāvigandō* is a gerund which takes as its object *aequora*. The sentence should be translated *Aesculapius came to Rome as a stranger by sailing the seas*. In the sentence *Gladī in cūriam Caesaris necandī causā lātī sunt*, *necandī* is a gerundive modifying *Caesaris*. The gerundive phrase is used here with *causā* (*for the sake of*) to indicate purpose, and the sentence should be translated *Swords were carried into the curia for the sake of killing Caesar* (literally *for the sake of Caesar to be killed*). This use of the gerundive is idiomatic and is preferred to the use of a gerund in the genitive plus an object in the accusative ( . . . *necandī Caesarem causā*), which could be used to achieve the same meaning.

The account of the apotheosis of Julius Caesar is the last story in the *Metamorphoses*. At the end of it, Ovid celebrates Augustus and says that he too will enter the heavens and listen to the prayers of mortals. He ends his poem with a statement about his own immortality as a poet, saying that he will be carried *super astra* (*beyond the stars*). Since he has just described Venus' release of Caesar's soul into the realm of the stars, Ovid seems to suggest at the end of the epic that his own literary immortality will outlast Caesar's (and perhaps Augustus'). Indeed, the last word of the entire epic is *vivam* (*I will live*).

# Glossary

**ā/ab:** (prep. + abl.) from, away from

**abdō, abdere, abdidī, abditum:** to hide, conceal

**abeō, abīre, abivī or abiī, abitum:** to go away, pass into a state

**abhorreō, abhorrēre, abhorruī:** to shrink back from, shudder at

**absum, abesse, abfuī, abfutūrum:** to be away from, be absent

**absūmō, absūmere, absumpsī,**

**absumptum:** to reduce, consume

**accēdō, accēdere, accessī, accessum:** to approach, come near

**accessus, ūs m.:** approach, entrance, access

**accidō, accidere, accidī:** to fall upon, happen, occur

**accipiō, accipere, accēpī, acceptum:** to receive, take, hear

**accipiter, accipitris m.:** hawk

**acclīnātus, a, um:** leaning on

**Actaeōn, Actaeonis m.:** Actaeon, a grandson of Cadmus

**acūmen, acūminis n.:** point, sharpness, cunning

**acuō, acuere, acuī, acūtum:** to sharpen

**acūtus, a, um:** sharp, pointed

**ad:** (prep. + acc.) to, towards

**adambulō, adambulāre, adambulāvī,**

**adambulātum:** to walk near, walk about

**addō, addere, addidī, additum:** to add, join to

**adeō, adīre, adīi, aditum:** to go or come to, approach

**adflō, adflāre, adflāvī, adflātum:** to blow on

**adfor, adfārī, adfātus sum:** to speak to, address

**adhūc:** (adv.) still

**adipiscor, adipiscī, adeptus sum:** to arrive at, obtain, acquire

**aditus, ūs m.:** approach, entrance, access

**adlevō, adlevāre, adlevāvī, adlevātum:** to lift up, erect

**admoneō, admonēre, admonuī,**

**admonitum:** to warn

**admoveō, admovēre, admōvī, admōtum:** to move towards

**adnuō, adnuere, adnuī, adnūtum:** to nod, give assent

**adolescō, adolescere, adolēvī:** to grow up

**adōro, adōrāre, adōrāvī, adōrātum:** to entreat, worship

**adsevērō, adsevērāre, adsevērāvī,**

**adsevērātum:** to assert with confidence

**adsimulō, adsimulāre, adsimulāvī,**

**adsimulātum:** to make like, imitate

**adspiciō, adspicere, adspexī, adspectum:** to look at, notice

**adsuētus, a, um:** customary, usual, familiar

**adsum, adesse, adfuī, adfutūrum:** to be at a place, be present

**adulter, adulterī m.:** adulterer

**adulterium, ī n.:** adultery

**aduncus, a, um:** hooked

**advena, ae m. or f.:** stranger

**adventus, ūs m.:** an arrival

**adytum, ī n.:** the innermost area of a temple

**Aeētēs, Aeētae m.:** Aeētes, king of Colchis

**aegis, aegidis f.:** aegis, special chest-armor embellished with a Gorgon-head

**aēneus, a, um:** bronze

**āenum, ī n.:** something made of bronze,  
bronze cauldron

**Aeolia, ae f.:** Aeolia, a region on the north-  
west coast of Asia Minor

**aequē:** (adv.) equally

**aequō, aequāre, aequāvī, aequātum:**  
to equal, make equal

**aequor, aequoris n.:** flat surface, plain, sea

**aequoreus, a, um:** surrounded by sea

**āēr, āeris m.:** air

**aerātus, a, um:** made of bronze

**aereus, a, um:** of bronze

**aes, aeris n.:** something made of bronze,  
bronze cymbal

**Aesculāpius, ī m.:** Aesculapius, god of healing

**aesculeus, a, um:** of oak

**Aesōn, Aesonis m.:** Aeson, father of Jason

**Aestās, Aestātis f.:** Summer, divine  
representation of the summertime

**aetas, aetātis f.:** age, period of life

**aether, aetheris m.:** the upper air (aethera =  
acc. sing.)

**aetherius, a, um:** heavenly

**Aethiopicus, a, um:** Ethiopian

**Aetna, ae f.:** Etna, a volcano in Sicily

**aevum, ī n.:** age, period of time

**Agāvē, Agāvēs f.:** Agave, mother of Pentheus

**Agēnor, Agēnoris m.:** Agenor, a king of  
Phoenicia

**ager, agrī m.:** field

**agitō, agitāre, agitāvī, agitātus:** to drive  
about, keep in movement, agitate

**agmen, agminis n.:** army, battle line

**agnoscō, agnoscere agnōvī, agnītum:** to  
recognize, know

**agnus, ī m.:** lamb

**agō, agere, ēgī, actum:** to drive, do,  
set in motion

**agrestis, agrestis m.:** rural person

**agricola, ae m.:** farmer

**āla, ae f.:** wing

**albeō, albēre:** to be white

**albus, a, um:** white

**aliī ... aliī:** some ... others

**aliquis, aliquid:** someone, something

**aliud ... aliīs:** one thing (nom.) ... the  
others (dat.)

**alius, alia, aliud:** (adj. and pron.) another,  
other, different

**alō, alere, aluī, altum:** to nourish, support

**alter ... altera:** the one ... the other

**alter, altera, alterum:** one of two

**altissimus, a, um:** highest

**altius:** (adv.) higher

**altus, a, um:** high, lofty

**alveus, ī m.:** a hollow, cavity, bed of a stream

**alvus, ī f.:** belly, womb

**amans, amantis m. or f.:** lover

**ambiō, ambīre, ambīvī, ambītum:** to go  
around, surround

**ambō, ambae, ambo:** (adj. and pron.) both

**ambulō, ambulāre, ambulāvī, ambulātum:**  
to walk

**ambustus, a, um:** burnt

**amīcitia, ae f.:** friendship

**amictus, ūs m.:** dress, garment

**āmissus, a, um:** lost

**āmittō, āmittere, āmīsī, amissum:** to send  
away, lose

**amnis, amnis m.:** river

**amō, amāre, amāvī, amātum:** to love

**amor, amōris m.:** love

**amplector, amplectī, amplexus sum:** to  
embrace, wrap around

**amplexus, ūs m.:** embrace

**Anaxaretē, ēs f.:** Anaxarete, a young woman  
from Cyprus

**Andromeda, ae:** Andromeda, an Ethiopian  
princess

**anguigena, ae m.:** snake-born man

**anguilla, ae f.:** eel

**anguis, anguis m. or f.:** serpent, snake

**angustus, a, um:** narrow, confined

**anilis, e:** like an old woman, aged

**anima, ae f.:** life, breath, soul

**animal, animālis n.:** animal

**animō, animāre, animāvī, animātum:** to  
endow with life

**animus, ī m.:** spirit, mind

**Annus, ī m.:** Year, divine representation of a year

**ante:** (adv. and prep. + acc.) before

**antequam:** (conj.) before

**Antiopa, ae f.:** Antiope, mother of Amphion and Zethus

**antīquus, a, um:** old, ancient

**antrum, ī n.:** cave, grotto

**anus, ūs f.:** an old woman

**anxius, a, um:** anxious, nervous

**Āonia, ae f.:** Aonia, part of the region of Boeotia in Greece

**aper, aprī m.:** a wild boar

**aperiō, aperīre, aperuī, apertum:** to open, uncover, lay bare

**Apollō, Apollinis m.:** Apollo, god of music, athletics, and prophecy

**appārēō, appārēre, appāruī, appāritum:** to appear, become visible

**appellō, appellāre, appellāvī, appellātum:** to address, name

**approperō, approperāre, approperāvī, approperātum:** to hasten

**appropinquō, appropinquāre, appropinquāvī, appropinquātum:** to approach

**aptus, a, um:** fitted to, suited to (+ dat.)

**aqua, ae f.:** water

**Aquārius, ī m.:** Aquarius (zodiac sign), a water carrier

**aquōsus, a, um:** watery

**āra, ae f.:** altar

**Arachnē, ēs f.:** Arachne, a Maeonian weaver

**arānea, ae f.:** spider, web

**arāneum, ī n.:** spiderweb

**arātrum, ī n.:** plow

**arbiter, arbitri m.:** judge

**arbor, arboris f.:** tree

**arbores, a, um:** of a tree

**Arcadius, a, um:** of Arcadia, a region in central Greece

**arceō, arcēre, arcuī, arctum:** to shut in, hinder, keep at a distance

**arcessō, arcessere, arcessivī, arcessitum:** to summon, call to a place

**arcitenēns, arcitenentis:** bow-holding, epithet of Apollo

**Arctos, ī f.:** the constellations known as Great and Little Bear, the north

**arcus, ūs m.:** bow, arch

**ardeō, ardēre, arsī:** to burn, glow

**ārea, ae f.:** open space, plain, threshing floor

**Arethūsa, ae f.:** Arethusa, a Sicilian nymph

**argenteus, a, um:** of silver

**argentum, ī n.:** silver

**argūmentum, ī n.:** tale, proof

**Ariēs, Arietis m.:** Aries (zodiac sign), a ram

**arista, ae f.:** stalk of grain

**arma, ōrum n. pl.:** arms, weapons

**armātus, a, um:** armed

**armentum, ī n.:** herd, flock

**armus, ī m.:** shoulder

**arō, arāre, arāvī, arātum:** to plow, till

**ars, artis f.:** skill, art, work of art

**artus, ūs m.:** joint, limb

**arvum, ī n.:** field

**arx, arcis f.:** citadel, stronghold

**ascendō, ascendere, ascendī, ascensum:** to ascend, climb

**astrum, ī n.:** star

**at:** (conj.) but, at least, moreover

**āter, ātra, ātrum:** black, dark

**Athēnae, ārum f. pl.:** Athens

**Athēnaeus, a, um:** of Athens

**Athēniēnsis, e:** of Athens

**athlēta, ae m.:** athlete, contender

**Atlās, Atlantis m.:** Atlas, the god who holds up the sky

**atque:** (conj.) and, and indeed

**ātrium, ī n.:** hall

**attonō, attonāre, attonuī, attonitum:** to strike with thunder, make senseless

**attrahō, attrahere, attraxī, attractum:** to drag, lead

**auctor, auctōris m.:** author, progenitor, founder

**audācia, ae f.:** boldness, courage

**audāx, audācis:** bold  
**audeō, audēre, ausus sum:** to dare  
**audiō, audīre, audīvī, auditum:** to hear, listen to  
**auferō, auferre, abstulī, ablātum:** to carry away, remove  
**augeō, augēre, auxī, auctum:** to make grow  
**augur, auguris m. or f.:** augur, soothsayer  
**augustus, a, um:** august, majestic  
**Augustus, ī m.:** Augustus, the first Roman emperor  
**aura, ae f.:** air, breeze, wind  
**aureus, a, um:** golden  
**auris, auris f.:** ear  
**Aurōra, ae f.:** Dawn, divine representation of dawn  
**aurum, ī n.:** gold  
**Auster, Austrī m.:** Auster, the south wind  
**aut: (conj.) or**  
**autem: (conj.) but, however**  
**Autumnus, ī m.:** Autumn, divine representation of the fall  
**auxilium, ī n.:** help, assistance  
**aveō, avēre:** to desire, long for  
**āveto, āvertere, āvertī, āversum:** to turn away, remove, avert  
**avis, avis f.:** bird, omen  
**avus, ī m.:** grandfather  
**axis, axis m.:** axle, axis

**bāca, ae f.:** fruit  
**Baccha, ae f.:** a Bacchante, female follower of Bacchus  
**Bacchantēs, Bacchantium f. pl.:** followers of Bacchus  
**Bacchus, ī m.:** Bacchus, the fertility god of wine and madness  
**baculus, ī m.:** staff, walking stick  
**bālātus, ūs m.:** a bleating  
**barba, ae f.:** beard  
**barbaricus, a, um:** barbarian  
**barbarus, ī m.:** barbarian  
**bāsiō, bāsiāre, bāsiāvī, bāsiātum:** to kiss  
**bāsium, ī n.:** kiss

**beātus, a, um:** happy  
**bellissimus, a, um:** most beautiful  
**bellum, ī n.:** war  
**bellus, a, um:** beautiful  
**bēlua, ae f.:** beast, monster  
**bēstia, ae f.:** beast, animal  
**bibulus, a, um:** drinking freely, absorbing  
**bidens, bidentis:** with two teeth (often used for sheep)  
**biformis, e:** of double form  
**bīnī, bīnae, bīna:** two, double, a pair  
**bis: (adv.)** in two ways, double  
**blanditia, ae f.:** gentleness, coaxing, flattery  
**blandus, a, um:** flattering, coaxing  
**Boeōtia, ae f.:** Boeotia, a region of Greece  
**bonus, a, um:** good  
**Boreās, ae m.:** Boreas, the north wind  
**bōs, bovis m. or f.:** cow, ox  
**bracchium, ī n.:** arm  
**brevis, e:** brief  
**Britannī, ōrum m. pl.:** the Britons  
**būbō, būbōnis m.:** owl

**cacūmen, cacūminis n.:** top, point, summit  
**cacūminō, cacūmināre, cacūmināvī, cacūminātum:** to make pointed, point  
**Cadmus, ī m.:** Cadmus, the son of Agenor  
**cadō, cadere, cecidī, cāsum:** to fall, sink, plunge  
**caecus, a, um:** blind  
**caedēs, is f.:** a cutting down, a killing  
**caedō, caedere, cecidī, caesum:** to cut, strike, kill  
**caelātus, a, um:** carved, engraved  
**caelebs, caelibis:** unmarried, uncoupled, single  
**caelestis, e:** heavenly, celestial  
**caelum, ī n.:** heaven, sky  
**caeruleus, a, um:** greenish blue  
**Caesar, Caesaris m.:** Julius Caesar, Roman general and dictator  
**caespis, caespitis m.:** turf, sod, earthen mound  
**Calais, is m.:** Calais, a son of Boreas and Orithyia  
**calathus, ī m.:** wicker basket

**calcātus, a, um:** stamped down, crushed  
**caleō, calēre, caluī:** to be hot  
**calescō, calescere:** to grow warm  
**calidus, a, um:** warm, hot  
**cālīgō, cālīginis f.:** darkness, mist  
**callidus, a, um:** skillful, crafty, cunning  
**calor, calōris m.:** heat  
**campus, ī m.:** field  
**Cancer, Cancrī m.:** Cancer (zodiac sign),  
a crab  
**candidus, a, um:** shining, bright, white  
**cāneō, cānēre, cānuī:** to be gray  
**canis, canis m. or f.:** dog  
**cantō, cantāre, cantāvī, cantātum:** to sing  
**cantus, ūs m.:** song, melody  
**cānus, a, um:** white, grey  
**capāx, capācis:** able to hold much material,  
capacious  
**capillus, ī m.:** hair  
**capiō, capere, cēpī, captum:** to seize, take  
**Capitōlium, ī n.:** the temple of Jupiter on the  
Tarpeian Rock  
**capra, ae f.:** goat  
**Capricornus, ī m.:** Capricorn (zodiac sign),  
a goat  
**caput, capitis n.:** head  
**carchesium, ī n.:** drinking cup  
**careō, carēre, caruī, caritum:** to lack (+ abl.)  
**Cāria, ae f.:** Caria, a district in Asia Minor  
**carīna, ae f.:** keel, ship  
**carmen, carminis n.:** song, poem  
**carnōsus, a, um:** fleshy, meaty  
**carpō, carpere, carpsī, carptum:** to pluck,  
choose, sieze  
**casa, ae f.:** cottage, cabin, house  
**Cassiopē, ēs f.:** Cassiopea, mother of  
Andromeda  
**cassis, cassidis f.:** helmet  
**Castalius, a, um.:** of Castalia, a fountain on  
Mt. Parnassus  
**castīgō, castīgāre, castīgāvī, castīgātum:**  
to punish  
**castra, ōrum n. pl.:** military encampment  
**castus, a, um:** clean, chaste, pious

**catēna, ae f.:** chain, bond  
**causa, ae f.:** cause, reason  
**causā:** (+ gen., always after its object) for the  
sake of  
**cautēs, cautis f.:** crag, cliff  
**caverna, ae f.:** cavern, cave  
**cavus, a, um:** hollow, concave  
**Cecropius, a, um:** of Cecrops, a legendary  
king of Athens  
**cēdo, cēdere, cessī, cessum:** to depart, yield  
(+ dat.)  
**celeberrimus, a, um:** very famous, most  
celebrated  
**cēlō, cēlāre, cēlāvī, cēlātum:** to hide,  
conceal, cover  
**cēna, ae f.:** dinner  
**Cephalus, ī m.:** Cephalus, son of Pandion  
**Cēphēnus, a, um:** of Cepheus, ruled by  
Cepheus  
**Cēphēus, a, um:** of Cepheus, a king of  
Ethiopia  
**Cēpheus, ī m.:** Cepheus, father of  
Andromeda  
**Cerēs, Cereris f.:** Ceres, goddess of grain and  
agriculture  
**cernēns, cernentis:** spying, looking upon  
**cernō, cernere, crēvī, crētum:** to separate,  
distinguish, perceive  
**certāmen, certāminis n.:** contest,  
competition  
**certē:** (adv.) certainly  
**certō, certāre, certāvī, certātum:** to  
compete  
**certus, a, um:** determined, fixed, certain  
**cerva, ae f.:** deer  
**cervus, ī m.:** stag  
**cēterī, ae, a:** others, rest  
**Chaos n.:** Chaos, personified boundless  
empty space  
**cibus, ī m.:** food  
**cicāda, ae f.:** cicada  
**Cicones, um m. pl.:** Ciconians, a people in  
Thrace  
**cinctus, a, um:** circled, encompassed

**cingō, cingere, cinxī, cinctum:** to gird, surround

**Cīpus, ī m.:** Cipus, an early Roman praetor  
**circumdō, circumdare, circumdedī, circumdatum:** to set around, surround

**circumeō, circumīre, circumī, or circum-ivī, circumitum:** to go around

**circumfluus, a, um:** flowing around  
**circumfundō, circumfundere, circumfūdī, circumfūsum:** to pour around, surround  
**circumspiciō, circumspicere, circumspexī, circumspectum:** to look round, survey, consider

**circumstō, circumstāre, circumstetī:** to stand around, encircle

**Cīris, Cīris f.:** a colorful bird

**Cithaerōn, Cithaerōnis m.:** Cithaeron, a mountain near Thebes

**citus, a, um:** quick, speedy

**cīvilis, e:** civil, relating to a citizen

**cīvis, cīvis m. or f.:** citizen

**clāmō, clāmāre, clāmāvī, clāmātum:** to shout, make a loud noise, call to or upon

**clāmor, clāmōris m.:** a loud shouting

**clārissimus, a, um:** brightest, clearest, most famous

**clārus, a, um:** clear, shining, brilliant

**classis, classis f.:** fleet

**claudō, claudere, clausī, clausum:** to close, make inaccessible

**claustra, ōrum n. pl.:** bar, bolt

**clipeus, ī m.:** shield

**Clymenē, ēs f.:** Clymene, a nymph

**Cnōsiacus, a, um:** of Knossos

**Cnōsius, a, um:** of Knossos, a city on Crete

**coclea, ae f.:** snail

**coeō, coīre, coiī, coitum:** come together, assemble

**coepiō, coepere, coepī, coeptum:** to begin, commence

**coeptus, a, um:** begun

**cōgitō, cōgitāre, cōgitāvī, cōgitātum:** to think, reflect, consider

**cognoscō, cognoscere, cognōvī, cognitum:** to become acquainted with, know, recognize

**coiēns, coeuntis:** coming together, mating

**Colchicus, a, um:** of Colchis, a region of the Black Sea

**colligō, colligere, collēgī, collectum:** to gather together, collect

**collis, collis m.:** hill

**collocō, collocāre, collocāvī, collocātum:** to place, locate

**collum, ī n.:** neck

**colō, colere, coluī, cultum:** to cultivate, tend, worship, inhabit

**color, colōris m.:** color, hue

**columna, ae f.:** column, pillar

**coma, ae f.:** hair

**combibō, combibere, combibī:** to drink

**comes, comitis m. or f.:** companion, comrade, partner

**committō, committere, commīsī,**

**commissum:** to join, combine

**communis, e:** that which is shared, common

**compāgo, compāginis f.:** a joining together, structure

**compellō, compellāre, compellāvī,**

**compellātum:** to address, accost

**compescō, compescere, compescuī:** to confine, check, restrain

**compleō, complēre, complēvī, complētum:** to fill up, fulfill

**complexus, ūs m.:** an embrace

**compōnō, compōnere, composuī, compositum:** to compose, put together, arrange

**compos, compotis:** having mastery of, possessed of (+gen.)

**comprehendō, comprehendere,**

**comprehendī, comprehensum:** to grab, understand

**concha, ae f.:** sea-shell, shell-fish

**concilium, ī n.:** meeting, assembly, council

**concipiō, concipere, concēpi, conceptum:** to receive, take completely, conceive

**conclāmō, conclāmāre, conclāmāvī,**

**conclāmātum:** to cry out loudly

**concursum, ūs m.:** collision, attack

**concutiō, concutere, concussī, concussum:**

to beat, strike, shake violently

**conditor, conditōris m.:** founder

**condō, condere, condidī, conditum:** to

found, hide, bury

**conferō, conferre, contulī, conlātum:** to

bring together, collect, bring to a place

**conficiō, conficere, confēcī, confectum:** to

accomplish, wear out

**confiteor, confitērī, confessus sum:** to

acknowledge, confess

**conflagrō, conflagrāre, conflagrāvī,**

**conflagrātum:** to catch fire, burn up

**confugiō, confugere, confūgī:** to flee to, take

refuge with

**confundō, confundere, confūdi, confusum:**

to pour together, mix up

**congelō, congelāre, congelāvī, congelātum:**

to freeze thoroughly

**coniciō, conicere, coniecī, coniectum:** to

throw, bring together, drive, force

**coniugialis, e:** marital

**coniunctor, ius:** more connected, more joined

**coniungō, coniungere, coniunxī, coniunc-**

**tum:** to join together, marry

**coniunx, coniugis m. or f.:** spouse, wife,

husband

**conscendō, conscendere, conscendī, con-**

**scensum:** to mount, climb up, go up to

**considerō, considerāre, considerāvī, con-**

**siderātum:** to look at closely, consider, reflect

**consilium, ī n.:** deliberation, counsel, plan,

advice

**consistō, consistere, constiti, constitum:** to

put oneself in a place, take a stand, be

posted

**consors, consortis m. or f.:** one who has an

equal share, partner, wife

**conspiciō, conspiciere, conspexī,**

**conspicuum:** to look at, observe

**constituō, constituere, constitui, con-**

**stitutum:** to cause to stand, settle, decide

**constō, constāre, constiti, constātum:** to

stand, stand firm, stand unchanging

**consulō, consulere, consuli, consultum:** to

consider, consult

**consūmō, consūmere, consumpsi,**

**consumptum:** to consume, spend

**consurgō, consurgere, consurrexi, consur-**

**rectum:** to raise oneself, rise, stand up

**contemnō, contemnere, contempsī,**

**contemptum:** to despise, think badly of

**contemptor, contemptōris m.:** a despiser

**contentus, a, um:** content, satisfied

**contineō, continēre, continui, contentum:**

to hold together, restrain

**contingō, contingere, contigi, contactum:** to

touch, affect

**contrā:** (adv.) on the opposite side

**contrārius, a, um:** opposite

**cōnūbium, ī n.:** marriage

**conveniō, convenīre, convēnī, conventum:**

to meet, come together

**conversus, a, um:** turned

**convexus, a, um:** arched, vaulted

**convivium, ī n.:** banquet, feast

**convocō, convocāre, convocāvi, con-**

**vocātum:** to call together, assemble

**cor, cordis n.:** heart

**corbis, corbis m.:** basket

**Corinthius, a, um:** of Corinth, a city in

southern Greece

**corium, ī n.:** skin, hide

**cornū, ūs n.:** horn

**corōna, ae f.:** garland, wreath, crown

**corōnō, corōnāre, corōnāvi, corōnātum:** to

wreath, crown

**corpus, corporis n.:** a body

**corpusculum, ī n.:** a small body

**corripiō, corripere, corripui, correptum:**

to seize violently, attack, blame, rebuke

**corrumpō, corrumpere, corrūpī,**

**corruptum:** to corrupt, destroy, spoil

**cortīna, ae f.:** cauldron, tripod

**crāter, crāteris m.:** mixing bowl, fissure in the earth

**crēdo, crēdere, crēdidī, crēditum:** to trust, believe (+ dat.)

**creō, creāre, creāvī, creātum:** to create, make

**crepitō, crepitāre, crepitāvī, crepitātum:** to rattle, crash, clatter

**crepusculum, ī n.:** the twilight

**Crēs, Crētis m.:** a Cretan

**crescō, crescere, crēvī, crētum:** to grow

**Crēta, ae f.:** Crete, an island in the Mediterranean Sea

**crīmen, crīminis n.:** accusation, crime

**crīnis, crīnis m.:** hair

**crīnītus, a, um:** hairy

**crista, ae f.:** crest

**cristātus, a, um:** crested, plumed

**cruciātus, ūs m.:** torture, torment

**cruciō, cruciāre, cruciāvī, cruciātum:** to torture

**crūdēlis, e:** cruel

**cruentātus, a, um:** bloody, made bloody

**cruentō, cruentāre, cruentāvī, cruentātum:** to make bloody

**cruor, cruōris m.:** blood from a wound, gore

**crūs, crūris n.:** leg

**cubiculum, ī n.:** bedchamber

**cubitum, ī n.:** elbow

**culmen, culminis n.:** summit, rooftop

**culpa, ae f.:** fault, blame

**culter, cultrī m.:** knife

**cultūra, ae f.:** cultivation, tilling

**cum:** (conj.) when, since, although, (prep. + abl.) with

**cūnae, ārum f. pl.:** cradle

**cunctus, a, um:** all, collectively, the whole

**cuniculus, ī m.:** rabbit

**Cupīdo, Cupidinis m.:** Cupid, the god of love (**cupīdo, cupidinis f.:** desire)

**cupiō, cupere, cupīvī, cupītum:** to desire, yearn for

**cupressus, ūs f.:** cypress tree

**cūr:** (interrog. adv.) why

**cūra, ae f.:** care, attention

**cūria, ae f.:** the senate-house in Rome

**currō, currere, cucurrī, cursum:** to run

**currus, ūs m.:** chariot

**cursō, cursāre, cursāvī, cursātum:** to run to and fro

**cursus, ūs m.:** course, path, journey

**curvus, a, um:** curved, bent, arched

**cuspis, cuspidis f.:** a point, spear

**custōdia, ae f.:** watch, guard, protection

**custos, custōdis m.:** guard

**cutis, cutis f.:** skin

**Cyanē, ēs f.:** Cyane, a Sicilian nymph

**Cytherēus, a, um:** of Cythera, epithet of Venus

**damnō, damnāre, damnāvī, damnātum:** to condemn, cause loss or injury to

**Danaē, ēs f.:** Danaë, daughter of Acrisius and mother of Perseus

**Daphnē, ēs f.:** Daphne, a nymph

**dē:** (prep. + abl.) from, down from, about

**dea, ae f.:** a goddess

**dēbeō, dēbere, dēbuī, dēbitum:** to owe, ought

**decet, decēre, decuit:** (impers. verb) it is proper, seemly, fitting (+ acc. of thing fitted)

**dēcidō, dēcidere, dēcidī:** to fall down, fall away

**dēcrētum, ī m.:** a decree

**decus, decoris n.:** honor, glory, charm

**dēdecet, dēdecēre, dēdecuit:** (impers. verb) it is unfitting, not suitable

**dēdūcō, dēdūcere, dēdūxī, dēdūctum:** to draw out, spin

**dēfendo, dēfendere, dēfendī, dēfensum:** to defend

**dēficiō, dēficere, dēfēcī, dēfectum:** to fail, run short, become weak

**dēfluō, dēfluere, dēflūxī, dēflūxum:** to fall down, drop off, disappear

**deinde:** (adv.) from that place, next, then

**dēlābor, dēlābī, dēlapsus sum:** to glide down, fall down, sink

**Dēlius, ī m.:** of Delos, epithet of Apollo  
**Delphī, ōrum m. pl.:** Delphi, a place famous for Apollo's oracle  
**dēlphīnus, ī m.:** dolphin  
**dēmēns, dēmentis:** out of one's mind, insane  
**dēmīttō, dēmīttēre, dēmīsī, dēmīssum:** to send down, drop  
**dēmō, demere, dempsi, demptum:** take away, withdraw, remove  
**dēnegō, dēnegāre, dēnegāvī, dēnegātum:** to deny  
**dēnī, dēnae, dēna:** by tens  
**dēnique:** (adv.) finally, at last  
**dens, dentis m.:** tooth  
**densus, a, um:** thick, dense  
**dēpōnō, dēpōnere, dēposuī, dēpositum:** to put down  
**dēprendō, dēprendere, dēprendī, dēpremsum:** to catch hold of, detect, discover  
**dēpressus, a, um:** seized, caught up  
**dērīdeō, dērīdēre, dērīsī, dērīsum:** to laugh at, mock  
**dērigēscō, dērigēscere, dēriguī:** to stiffen  
**dēscendō, dēscendere, dēscendī, descensum:** to go down, descend  
**dēserō, dēserere, dēseruī, dēsertum:** to leave, abandon, forsake  
**dēsīgnō, dēsīgnāre, dēsīgnāvī, dēsīgnātum:** to signify, indicate, mark out  
**dēsīlīō, dēsīlīre, dēsīluī, dēsultum:** to leap down  
**dēsīnō, dēsīnere, dēsī, dēsītum:** to cease, desist, stop  
**dēsīstō, dēsistere, dēsītī, dēsītum:** to cease  
**dēsōlātus, a, um:** desolate, forsaken  
**despectō, despectāre, despectāvī, despectātum:** to look down  
**dēspīcīō, dēspīcere, dēspexī, dēspectum:** to look down on, despise, disregard  
**dēsum, dēesse, dēfuī, dēfutūrum:** to fail, be lacking  
**Deucaliōn, Deucaliōnis m.:** Deucalion, a son of Prometheus

**deus, ī m.:** a god  
**dexter, dextra, dextrum (or dextera, dexterum):** right, on the right  
**Diāna, ae f.:** Diana, goddess of the hunt  
**dīcō, dīcere, dīxī, dictum:** to say, speak  
**dictum, ī n.:** something said  
**Dīs, Diē ī m. or f.:** Day, divine representation of a day  
**digitus, ī m.:** finger  
**dignior, ius:** more worthy  
**dignissimus, a, um:** most worthy  
**dignus, a, um:** worthy, deserving of (+ abl.)  
**dīlābor, dīlābī, dīlapsus sum:** to fall down, fall apart, perish  
**dīlacerō, dīlacerāre, dīlacerāvī, dīlacerātum:** to tear in pieces  
**dīlaniō, dīlaniāre, dīlaniāvī, dīlaniātum:** to tear to pieces  
**dīlīgō, dīlīgere, dīlēxī, dīlēctum:** to have affection for, choose  
**dīlūvium, ī n.:** flood  
**dīmīttō, dīmīttēre, dīmīsī, dīmīssum:** to send away, let go  
**dīrus, a, um:** horrible, dire  
**Dīs, Dītis m.:** Dis, another name for Pluto  
**discedō, discedere, discessī, discessum:** to depart, go away, separate  
**discors, discordis:** disagreeing, opposed, not harmonious  
**disiungō, disiungere, disiunxī, disiunctum:** to disjoin, unyoke, separate  
**dispēnsō, dispēnsāre, dispēnsāvī, dispēnsātum:** to distribute  
**dissideō, dissidēre, dissēdī, dissesum:** to be different, disagree  
**diū:** (adv.) for a long time  
**dīversus, a, um:** separate, different, opposed  
**dīves, dīvītis:** rich  
**dīvidō, dīvidere, dīvīsī, dīvīsum:** to divide  
**dīvitior, ius:** richer  
**dīvus, a, um:** divine  
**dō, dare, dedī, datum:** to give  
**doleō, dolēre, doluī, dolitum:** to grieve, suffer pain, cause pain (+ dat.)

**dolor, dolōris m.:** pain, sorrow, distress  
**domina, ae f.:** royal lady, wife  
**dominus, ī m.:** master  
**domō, domāre, domuī, domitum:** to tame, subdue  
**domus, ūs f.:** house, home  
**dōnum, ī n.:** gift  
**Dōris, Dōridos f.:** Doris, a sea nymph  
**dormiō, dormīre, dormīvī, dormītum:** to sleep  
**dōtālis, e:** given as part of a dowry  
**draco, dracōnis m.:** snake  
**dubitō, dubitāre, dubitāvī, dubitātum:** to hesitate, be doubtful  
**dubius, a, um:** doubtful, uncertain  
**dūcō, dūcere, duxī, ductum:** to lead  
**dum:** (conj.) while  
**duo, duae, duo:** two  
**dūrātus, a, um:** made hard, hard  
**durior, ius:** harder, tougher  
**dūrus, a, um:** hard  
**dux, ducis m.:** leader

**ē/ex:** (prep. + abl.) out of, from  
**ebur, eboris n.:** ivory  
**eburnus, a, um:** made of ivory  
**ecce:** (interj.) behold! look!  
**Echīon, Echīonis m.:** Echion, one of the Thebans sprung from the serpent's teeth  
**ēdō, ēdere, ēdī, ēsum:** to eat  
**ēdō, ēdere, ēdidī, ēditum:** to put forth, give out, make known  
**ēdoceō, ēdocēre, ēdocuī, ēdoctum:** to explain, inform fully  
**ēducō, ēducāre, educāvī, educātum:** to rear, bring up  
**effērō, efferre, extulī, elātum:** to carry off, carry away, bury, destroy  
**efficiō, efficere, effēcī, effectum:** to bring about, cause to happen  
**effluō, effluere, effluxī:** to flow out, run out  
**effodiō, effodere, effōdī, effossum:** to dig out  
**effrēnātus, a, um:** ungoverned, unrestrained  
**effugiō, effugere, effūgī:** to flee

**effundō, effundere, effūdī, effusum:** to pour out  
**ego, meī m. or f.:** (first person sing. pron.) mihi (dat.), mē (acc./abl.), I, me  
**ēiciō, ēicere, ēiēcī, ēiectum:** to throw out, expel  
**ēlīdō, ēlīdere, ēlīsī, ēlīsum:** to squeeze out, strike  
**ēligō, ēligere, ēlēgī, ēlectum:** to choose, pluck out  
**ēlīmō, ēlīmāre, ēlīmāvī, ēlīmātum:** to polish, elaborate, perfect  
**ēlūdō, ēlūdere, ēlūsī, ēlūsum:** to fool  
**ēmicō, ēmicāre, ēmicuī, ēmicātum:** to spring out, break forth  
**ēmineō, ēminēre, ēminuī:** to project, stand out  
**ēmittō, ēmittere, ēmīsī, ēmissum:** to send out, send away  
**enim:** (conj.) indeed, in fact  
**ēnītor, ēnītī, ēnīxus sum:** to struggle, exert oneself, give birth to  
**ensis, ensis m.:** sword  
**ēnūtriō, ēnūtrīre, ēnūtrīvī, ēnūtrītum:** to nourish, bring up  
**eō, īre, īvī or īī, itum:** to go  
**Epidaurius, a, um:** of Epidaurus, a town in Greece  
**Epidaurus, ī f.:** Epidaurus, a town famous for the sanctuary of Aesculapius  
**epops, epopis m.:** hoopoe, a bird with a crown of feathers and a long beak  
**epulae, ārum f. pl.:** food, feast  
**equus, ī m.:** horse  
**Erechtheus, ī m.:** Erechtheus, an early king of Athens  
**ērēctus, a, um:** raised up, erect  
**ērigō, ērigere, ērēxī, ērēctum:** to lift up, raise, excite  
**ēripiō, ēripere, ēripuī, ēreptum:** to snatch away, tear out, rescue  
**errō, errāre, errāvī, errātum:** to wander  
**error, errōris m.:** a wandering about, mistake  
**ērubescō, ērubescere, ērubuī:** to blush, grow red

**et:** (conj.) and

**etiam:** (adv.) also, too

**Eumenidēs, um f. pl.:** Furies, goddesses of vengeance

**Eurōpa, ae f.:** Europa, daughter of the Phoenician King Agenor

**Eurus, ī m.:** Eurus, the east wind

**ēvolvō, ēvolvere, ēvolvī, ēvolūtum:** to unroll

**exanimis, e:** lifeless

**exardescō, exardescere, exarsī, exarsum:** to burn, become excited

**excelsus, a, um:** lofty, high

**excidō, excidere, excidī:** to fall out, fall from, slip

**excipiō, excipere, excēpī, exceptum:** to take out, except, receive

**exclāmō, exclāmāre, exclāmāvī, exclāmātum:** to cry aloud, call out

**excōgitō, excōgitāre, excōgitāvī, excōgitātum:** to devise, invent

**excutiō, excutere, excussī, excussum:** to shake out

**exemplum, ī n.:** example

**exerceō, exercēre, exercuī, exercitum:** to bother, work

**exhaustus, a, um:** empty, exhausted

**exilium, ī n.:** banishment, exile

**exhibeō, exhibēre, exhibuī, exhibitum:** to bring out, reveal, show

**exigō, exigere, exēgī, exactum:** to drive out

**exiguus, a, um:** scant, few, small, little

**exitium, ī n.:** destruction, ruin

**experientia, ae f.:** trial, testing

**experior, experīrī, expertus sum:** to try, test, attempt

**explōrō, explōrāre, explōrāvī, explōrātum:** to search out, investigate

**exsiliō, exsilire, exsiluī, exsultum:** to jump out

**expectō, expectāre, expectāvī, expectātum:** to await, look for, expect

**exstimulō, exstimulāre, exstimulāvī, exstimulātum:** to spur on

**exstinguō, exstinguere, exstinxi,**

**exstinctum:** to put out, extinguish

**extō, extāre:** to stand out, show oneself

**exsul, exsulis m. or f.:** an exile, banished person

**exsultō, exsultāre, exsultāvī, exsultātum:** to jump up, leap up, exult

**exta, extōrum n. pl.:** the entrails of an animal

**extemplō:** (adv.) immediately, straightway

**externus, a, um:** foreign, strange

**extrēmus, a, um:** extreme, last, farthest

**exululō, exululāre, exululāvī, exululātum:** to howl loudly

**exuō, exuere, exuī, exūtum:** to take off, lay aside

**exūrō, exūrere, exussi, exustum:** to burn out, burn up

**fabricō, fabricāre, fabricāvī, fabricātum:** to make, construct

**fābula, ae f.:** story, tale

**faciēs, faciē f.:** form, shape, face

**facinus, facinoris n.:** deed, evil deed, crime

**faciō, facere, fēcī, factum:** to make, do

**factum, ī n.:** deed, act

**fācundus, a, um:** eloquent

**fallax, fallācis:** deceitful, deceptive

**fallō, fallere, fefellī, falsum:** to deceive, lead astray, disappoint

**falsus, a, um:** false, fake, deceitful

**falx, falcis f.:** pruning-hook, scythe

**fāma, ae f.:** fame, reputation, story

**famēs, famis f.:** hunger

**famulāris, e:** relating to slaves

**famulus, ī m.:** servant, attendant

**fastigium, ī n.:** gable, pediment

**fastus, ūs m.:** haughtiness, arrogance, pride

**fātālis, e:** fated, destined

**fateor, fatērī, fassus sum:** to confess, acknowledge

**fātidicus, a, um:** speaking fate, prophetic

**fātum, ī n.:** something fated, destiny

**faux, faucis f.:** throat, narrow entrance

- fax, facis f.:** torch  
**fēcundus, a, um:** fruitful, fertile  
**fēlix, fēlicis:** fortunate, happy  
**fēmina, ae f.:** woman  
**fēmineus, a, um:** feminine, of a woman  
**femur, femoris n.:** thigh  
**fera, ae f.:** wild animal, beast  
**ferē:** (adv.) almost, nearly  
**feriēns, ferientis:** beating, striking  
**feriō, ferire:** to strike, knock  
**ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum:** to bear, carry, endure  
**ferox, ferōcis:** courageous, wild, warlike  
**ferreus, a, um:** made of iron  
**ferrum, ī n.:** iron  
**fertilitās, fertilitātis f.:** fruitfulness, fertility  
**ferus, a, um:** untamed, wild, rough  
**ferveō, fervēre, ferbuī:** to boil, burn  
**fessus, a, um:** tired, exhausted  
**festinō, festināre, festināvī, festinātum:** to hurry, make haste  
**fēstus, a, um:** having to do with a holiday or festival  
**fētus, ūs m.:** offspring, sapling, fruit  
**fibra, ae f.:** fiber  
**fictus, a, um:** formed, fashioned, feigned  
**fides, eī f.:** trust, belief, faith  
**fīdūcia, ae f.:** trust, confidence, security  
**fīgō, figere, fixī, fixum:** to fix, fasten, thrust a weapon  
**figūra, ae f.:** form, figure, shape  
**fīlia, ae f.:** daughter  
**fīlius, filiū m.:** son  
**fīlum, ī n.:** thread  
**fingō, fingere, finxī, fictum:** to shape, fashion, form  
**fīniō, finire, finivī, finitum:** to put an end to, limit  
**fīnis, finis m. or f.:** border, limit  
**fīō, fierī, factus sum:** to become, occur, be done  
**firmō, firmāre, firmāvī, firmātum:** to make firm, strengthen, prove  
**fissus, a, um:** split, divided  
**flagrō, flagrāre, flagrāvī, flagrātum:** to blaze  
**flamma, ae f.:** flame, fire  
**flammifer, flammifera, flammiferum:** carrying flames  
**flāvus, a, um:** blonde, yellow  
**flectō, flectere, flexī, flexum:** to bend, turn  
**fleō, flēre, flēvī, flētum:** to weep  
**flētus, ūs m.:** tears, weeping  
**flōs, flōris m.:** flower  
**flūmen, flūminis n.:** a flowing, river  
**flūmineus, a, um:** of a river  
**fluō, fluere, fluxī, fluxum:** to flow  
**fodiō, fodere, fōdī, fossum:** to dig, pierce, stab  
**foedō, foedāre, foedāvī, foedātus:** to make foul, make filthy  
**fōns, fontis m.:** spring, fountain  
**forāmen, forāminis n.:** an opening, hole  
**forceps, forcipis f.:** pair of tongs, pincers  
**foris, foris f.:** door, gate  
**forma, ae f.:** form, shape  
**formō, formāre, formāvī, formātum:** to form, shape, fashion  
**formōsus, a, um:** beautiful  
**fors, forte (abl.) f.:** luck, chance  
**fortior, ius:** stronger, more powerful  
**fortis, e:** strong, powerful  
**fortissimus, a, um:** strongest, bravest  
**fortūna, ae f.:** luck, fortune  
**fortūnātus, a, um:** blessed, happy  
**forum, ī n.:** public space in Rome, center for business and politics  
**fossa, ae f.:** ditch, trench  
**frangō, frangere, frēgī, fractum:** to break, break into pieces  
**frāter, frātris m.:** brother  
**fraus, fraudis f.:** deceit, deception, fraud  
**fremō, fremere, fremuī, fremitum:** to roar, murmur  
**frēnum, ī n.:** bridle, reins  
**frequentō, frequentāre, frequentāvī, frequentātum:** to crowd, flock to, attend  
**fretum, ī n.:** strait



**habitus, ūs m.:** condition, attire, dress, bearing  
**Haemonius, a, um:** of Haemonia, of Thessaly  
**haereō, haerēre, haesi, haesum:** to stick, get stuck  
**haliaeetus, ī m.:** osprey, sea-eagle  
**hamadryas, hamadryadis f.:** a wood nymph  
**harēna, ae f.:** sand  
**harundo, harundinis f.:** fishing rod  
**haruspex, haruspiciis m.:** a soothsayer who prophesies by looking at entrails  
**hasta, ae f.:** a spear  
**hostile, hostilis n.:** shaft of a spear, spear  
**haud:** (adv.) not at all, by no means  
**hauriō, haurire, hausī, haustum:** to draw out, drink  
**Hecatē, ēs f.:** Hecate, goddess of witchcraft  
**Hecatēius, a, um:** of Hecate, goddess of witchcraft  
**hedera, ae f.:** ivy  
**Helena, ae f.:** Helen of Troy, queen of Sparta  
**Helicon, Helicōnis m.:** Helicon, a mountain in Greece  
**Hennaues, a, um:** of Henna, a Sicilian city  
**herba, ae f.:** herb, grass  
**herbōsus, a, um:** grassy  
**herī:** (adv.) yesterday  
**Hermaphroditus, ī m.:** Hermaphroditus, the son of Mercury and Venus  
**Hersilia, ae f.:** Hersilia, wife of Romulus  
**Hesperia, ae f.:** Hesperia, a western land  
**heu:** (interj.) oh! alas!  
**hic, haec, hoc:** (demonst. pron.) this, these  
**hic:** (adv.) here, in this place  
**Hiems, Hiemis f.:** Winter, divine representation of the winter  
**hirsūtus, a, um:** rough, shaggy, bristly  
**homō, hominis m.:** man, human being  
**honor, honoris n.:** honor, prize  
**honōrātus, a, um:** honored, respected  
**honos, honoris n.:** honor, distinction  
**Hora, ae f.:** Hora, the name of deified Hersilia  
**Hōrae, ārum f.:** Hours, goddessess of time and seasons

**horrendus, a, um:** dreadful, terrible, horrible  
**horridus, a, um:** unkempt, rough, uncouth, horrible  
**hortātus, a, um:** having urged  
**hortor, hortārī, hortātus sum:** to encourage, urge on  
**hortus, ī m.:** garden  
**hospes, hospitīs m.:** host, guest, stranger  
**hospitium, ī n.:** hospitality  
**hostilis, e:** hostile, unfriendly  
**hostis, hostis m.:** enemy  
**hūc:** (adv.) to this place  
**hūmnānus, a, um:** human  
**humus, ī f.:** ground  
**hydrus, ī m.:** water-snake  
**Hymēn, Hymenis m.:** Hymen, a god of marriage  
**Hymenaeus, ī m.:** Hymenaeus, a god of marriage  
**iaceō, iacēre, iacuī, iacitum:** to lie  
**iaciō, iacere, iēcī, iactum:** to throw  
**iactātus, ūs m.:** a shaking, fluttering, moving quickly up and down  
**iactō, iactāre, iactāvī, iactātum:** to throw, hurl  
**iaculum, ī n.:** dart, javelin  
**iam:** (adv.) now, already  
**iamque:** (adv.) now, already  
**Īapetus, ī m.:** Iapetus, the father of Atlas  
**Īāsōn, Īasonis m.:** Jason, leader of the Argonauts  
**ibi:** (adv.) there, in that place  
**īciō, icere, īcī, ictum:** to strike, hit  
**ictus, ūs m.:** blow, strike  
**Īdaeus, a, um:** of Mt. Ida, a mountain near Troy  
**īdem, eadem, idem:** the same  
**igitur:** (conj.) therefore  
**ignescō, ignescere:** to catch fire  
**ignis, ignis m.:** fire  
**ignōtus, a, um:** unknown  
**ille, illa, illud:** (demonst. pron.) that, those  
**illīc:** (adv.) there, in that place  
**illūc:** (adv.) to that place

**Illyricus, a, um:** of Illyria, a region bordering the Adriatic Sea

**imāgo, imāginis f.:** image, likeness

**immēnsus, a, um:** huge

**immergō, immergere, immersī, immer-sum:** to dip, plunge, immerse

**immeritus, a, um:** undeserving

**immisceō, immiscēre, immiscuī, immix-tum:** to mix in, blend, intermingle

**immittō, immittere, immīsī, immisum:** to send in

**immōtus, a, um:** unmoved

**impellō, impellere, impulī, impulsum:** to push, drive, set in motion

**imperfectus, a, um:** unfinished, incomplete

**imperō, imperāre, imperāvī, imperātum:** to command, order

**impetus, ūs m.:** impulse

**impius, a, um:** impious, disrespectful

**impleō, implēre, implēvī, implētum:** to fill up

**implūmis, e:** featherless

**impōnō, impōnere, imposuī, impositum:** to lay or place upon, impose on

**improbus, a, um:** wicked

**īmus, a, um:** lowest, deepest

**in:** (prep. + abl.) in, on; (prep. + acc.) into

**inānis, e:** empty, void

**incertus, a, um:** uncertain, doubtful

**incestus, a, um:** impure, defiled, sinful

**incidium, ī n.:** sign, evidence

**incipiō, incipere, incēpī, ineptum:** to begin

**incitō, incitāre, incitāvī, incitātum:** to urge, motivate, excite

**inclūdō, inclūdere, inclūsī, inclūsum:** to close in, enclose

**incognitus, a, um:** unknown

**inconditus, a, um:** disorderly, not clearly arranged, hidden in

**inconsolābilis, e:** incurable, inconsolable

**increpō, increpere, increpuī, increpitum:** to make a noise, resound

**incumbō, incumbere, incubuī, incubitum:** to lie down on, lean on

**incūnābula, ōrum n. pl.:** cradle, birthplace

**inde:** (adv.) from there

**index, indicis m.:** informer, that which informs, sign

**indicō, indicāre, indicāvī, indicātum:** to make known, show

**indīgestus, a, um:** confused, unarranged

**indignāns, indignantis:** offended, impatient

**indolescō, indolescere, indoluī:** to be pained, grieve

**indūcō, indūcere, induxī, inductum:** to bring in, introduce, draw over a surface (+ dat.)

**indūrō, indūrāre, indūrāvī, indūrātum:** to harden, make hard

**inermis, e:** unarmed

**iners, inertis:** inactive, idle

**īnfāmia, ae f.:** negative report, dishonor

**infāns, infantis m. or f.:** speechless one, baby

**infectus, a, um:** (infaciō) undone, unfinished

**infectus, a, um:** (inficiō) stained, dyed

**infēlix, infēlicis:** unhappy

**inferior, ius:** lower

**infernus, a, um:** lower, from below

**infestus, a, um:** unsafe, dangerous, infested

**īnfirmus, a, um:** feeble, weak

**ingemō, ingemere, ingemuī:** to groan

**ingenium, ī n.:** nature, genius, character

**ingēns, ingentis:** huge

**ingredior, ingredī, ingressus sum:** to step in, enter, walk

**inhibeō, inhibēre, inhibuī, inhibitum:** to hold in check, restrain

**inhospitus, a, um:** inhospitable, uninviting

**inimīcus, a, um:** hostile, unkind

**iniūria, ae f.:** injury, harm

**inlaqueō, inlaqueāre, inlaqueāvī, inlaqueātum:** to trap, ensnare

**innātus, a, um:** inborn

**innectō, innectere, innexuī, innexum:** to entwine

**innītor, innīti, innixus sum:** to lean upon, rest on

**innumerus, a, um:** innumerable, countless

**Īnō, ūs f.:** Ino, a daughter of Cadmus

**inobservātus, a, um:** unseen, unobserved

- inops, inopis:** lacking in (+ gen.)  
**inordinātus, a, um:** disordered, confused  
**inquit, inquunt:** he, she, it says, they say  
**inrideō, inridere, inrīsī, inrīsum:** to mock, jeer at  
**inritus, a, um:** void, invalid  
**insculpō, insculpere, insculpsī, insculptum:** to cut into, engrave  
**inserō, inserere, inseruī, insertum:** put in, insert  
**insidiae, ārum f.:** ambush, treachery  
**insigne, insignis n.:** a distinguishing mark, sign  
**insignis, insigne:** distinguished, remarkable  
**insiliō, insilire, insiluī:** to leap on, leap into  
**insonō, insonāre, insonuī:** to resound  
**instituō, instituere, instituī, institūtum:** to put in place, establish  
**instrūmentum, ī n.:** tool, instrument  
**insula, ae f.:** island  
**insuō, insuere, insuī, insūtum:** to sew in, sew up  
**insuperabilis, e:** insurmountable  
**intālescō, intālescere, intābuī:** to melt away, dissolve  
**intendō, intendere, intendī, intentum:** to direct, stretch  
**inter:** (prep. + acc.) among, between  
**intereā:** (adv.) meanwhile  
**interius:** (adv.) inside  
**intermittō, intermittere, intermīsī, intermissum:** to discontinue, interrupt, suspend  
**intertexō, intertexere, intertexuī, intertextum:** to interweave  
**intervenīō, intervenire, intervēnī, interventum:** to come between, intervene, interrupt  
**intexō, intexere, intexuī, intextum:** to weave in  
**intrā:** (prep. + acc.) inside, within  
**intremiscō, intremiscere:** to tremble  
**intrō, intrāre, intrāvī, intrātum:** to walk into, enter  
**inveniō, invenire, invēnī, inventum:** to find, discover  
**invergō, invergere:** to pour upon  
**invidiosus, a, um:** envious, hateful, hostile  
**invītō, invitāre, invitāvī, invitātum:** to invite  
**invītus, a, um:** unwilling  
**iō:** (interj.) the cry of the Bacchantes  
**iocosus, a, um:** jocular, playful  
**iocus, ī m.:** joke  
**Iolcus, ī f.:** Iolcus, a city in Thessaly and Jason's home  
**Īphis, Īphis m.:** Iphis, a young man from Cyprus  
**ipse, ipsa, ipsum:** himself, herself, itself  
**īra, ae f.:** anger, rage  
**īrātus, a, um:** angered, enraged  
**Īris, Īris f.:** Iris, goddess of the rainbow and messenger of the gods  
**irrigō, irrigāre, irrigāvī, irrigātum:** to water, irrigate, wet, moisten  
**irritō, irritāre, irritāvī, irritātum:** to stir up, incite  
**irrupō, irrumpere, irrūpī, irruptum:** to break in, rush in  
**is, ea, id:** (third person pron.) eius (gen.) he, she, it, this, that  
**Ismēnis, Ismēnidis f.:** a Theban woman  
**Ismēnus, ī m.:** Ismenus, one of Niobe's sons  
**Issē, ēs f.:** Isse, a princess of Lesbos  
**iste, ista, istud:** (demonst. pron.) that, those  
**iter, itineris n.:** journey, way  
**Itys, Ityos m.:** Itys, the son of Tereus and Procne  
**iubar, iubaris n.:** light, brightness, sunshine  
**iubeō, iubere, iussī, iussum:** to order, command  
**iūdex, iūdicis m.:** judge  
**iugulum, ī n.:** throat  
**iugum, ī n.:** yoke, team of draft animals, mountain ridge  
**Iūlius, ī m.:** Julius Caesar  
**iungō, iungere, iunxī, iunctum:** to join, unite

**Iūnō, Iūnōnis f.:** Juno, wife of Jupiter, goddess of marriage  
**Iūnōnigena, ae m.:** son of Juno  
**Iuppiter, Iovis m.:** Jupiter/Jove, ruler of the gods  
**iūrātus, a, um:** sworn to  
**iurgium, ī n.:** argument, quarrel  
**iūrō, iūrāre, iūrāvī, iūrātum:** to swear  
**iūs, iūris n.:** right, law  
**iustē:** (adv.) justly  
**iustissimus, a, um:** most just  
**iūstitia, ae f.:** justice  
**iustius:** (adv.) more justly  
**iūtus, a, um:** helped, aided  
**iuvenālis, e:** youthful  
**iuvenca, ae f.:** cow  
**iuvenus, ī m.:** young bull  
**iuvenis, iuvenis m. or f.:** young person, youth  
**Iuventa, ae f.:** Juventa, the goddess of youth  
**iuventus, iuventūtis f.:** youth, prime of life  
**iuvō, iuvāre, iūvī, iūtum:** to help, aid, please, delight  
  
**labia, ae f.:** lip  
**labō, labāre, labāvī, labātum:** to waver, totter  
**labor, labōris m.:** work, labor  
**lābor, lābī, lapsus sum:** to glide down, fall, slip  
**labōrātus, a, um:** made, manufactured  
**labōrō, labōrāre, labōrāvī, labōrātum:** to work at  
**lac, lactis n.:** milk  
**lacerō, lacerāre, lacerāvī, lacerātum:** to tear, lacerate  
**lacertus, ī m.:** arm  
**lacrima, ae f.:** tear  
**lactō, lactāre, lactāvī, lactātum:** to give milk, contain milk  
**lacus, ūs m.:** hollow, lake  
**laedō, laedere, laesī, laesum:** to strike, injure  
**laetus, a, um:** joyful, happy, delighted  
**laevus, a, um:** left side

**lambō, lambere, lambī, lambitum:** to lick, lap  
**lāna, ae f.:** wool  
**lancea, ae f.:** lance, spear  
**lānificus, a, um:** having to do with wool-working  
**lāniger, lānigerī m.:** ram  
**laniō, laniāre, laniāvī, laniātum:** to tear to pieces  
**lapillus, ī m.:** little stone, pebble  
**lapis, lapidis m.:** a stone  
**laqueus, ī m.:** noose, snare, trap  
**lascīvus, a, um:** playful, insolent  
**latebra, ae f.:** retreat, hiding place  
**lateō, latēre, latuī:** to lie concealed  
**latex, laticis m.:** liquid, fluid  
**Latīnus, a, um:** of Latium, the region which includes Rome  
**Latius, a, um:** of Latium  
**Lātōna, ae f.:** Latona, mother of Apollo and Diana  
**lātus, a, um:** wide, broad  
**latus, lateris n.:** side  
**laudō, laudāre, laudāvī, laudātum:** to praise  
**laurea, ae f.:** the laurel tree  
**laurus, ī f.:** the laurel tree, laurels  
**laus, laudis f.:** praise  
**lavō, lavāre, lāvī, lautum:** to wash  
**lectus, ī m.:** couch, marriage bed  
**Lēda, ae f.:** Leda, mother of Helen of Troy  
**legō, legere, lēgī, lectum:** to pick out, choose, read  
**Lemnius, ī m.:** of Lemnos, epithet of Vulcan  
**lentē:** (adv.) slowly  
**lentus, a, um:** supple, malleable, slow  
**Leō, Leōnis m.:** Leo (zodiac sign), a lion  
**lētātus, a, um:** murdered  
**lētum, ī n.:** death, ruin  
**levis, e:** light, swift  
**levō, levāre, levāvī, levātum:** to raise up, lift, make light, ease  
**lex, legis f.:** a law, formal agreement  
**Liber, Liberī m.:** Liber, an Italian deity associated with Bacchus

**liberō, liberāre, liberāvī, liberātum:** to free  
**libīdō, libīdinis f.:** lust  
**Libra, ae f.:** Libra (zodiac sign), scales  
**Libycus, a, um:** of Lybia  
**licet, licēre, licuit:** (impers. verb) it is allowed  
 (+ inf.)  
**ligātus, a, um:** tied up, caught up  
**ligō, ligāre, ligāvī, ligātum:** to tie  
**līlium, ī n.:** lily  
**līmen, līminis n.:** threshold  
**lingua, ae f.:** tongue  
**līnum, ī n.:** linen, thread, hunter's net  
**liquefaciō, liquefacere, liquefēcī, liquefac-  
 tum:** to melt, liquefy  
**liquescō, liquescere, licuī:** to become liquid,  
 dissolve, melt  
**liquidus, a, um:** liquid, fluid  
**līs, lītis f.:** legal controversy, suit, quarrel,  
 contention  
**lītus, lītoris n.:** the shore  
**Līvor, Līvōris f.:** Envy, the goddess of jealousy  
**loca, ōrum, n.:** region  
**locus, ī m.:** place  
**longius:** (adv.) farther  
**longus, a, um:** long, extended  
**loquor, loquī, locūtus sum:** to speak  
**lūbricus, a, um:** slippery, smooth  
**lūcēns, lūcentis:** shining, gleaming  
**lūceō, lucēre, luxī:** to be bright, gleam  
**luctor, luctārī, luctātus sum:** to wrestle,  
 struggle, contend  
**luctus, ūs m.:** lamentation, grief  
**lūcus, ī m.:** wood, grove  
**lūdō, lūdere, lūsī, lūsum:** to play, frolic, trick  
**lūdus, ī m.:** game  
**luēs, luis f.:** disease, pestilence, plague  
**lūmen, lūminis n.:** light, sight, eye  
**lūna, ae f.:** the moon  
**lupus, ī m.:** a wolf  
**lustrō, lustrāre, lustrāvī, lustrātum:** to go  
 place to place, traverse, purify  
**lustrum, ī n.:** a den, lair, bog, woodland  
**lux, lūcis f.:** light  
**luxuriēs, luxuriēī f.:** extravagance, excess

**luxuriō, luxuriāre, luxuriāvī, luxuriātum:**  
 to be abundant, enlarge, grow rapidly  
**Lycāōn, Lycāonis m.:** Lycaon, mythical ruler  
 of Arcadia  
**Lycius, a, um:** of Lycia, a region of Asia Minor  
**Lȳdia, ae f.:** Lydia, a region of Asia Minor  
**lymp̄ha, ae f.:** clear water, spring water  
**lyra, ae f.:** lyre  
  
**maciēs, maciēī f.:** leanness  
**mactō, mactāre, mactāvī, mactātum:** to  
 slay, sacrifice  
**maculō, maculāre, maculāvī, maculātum:**  
 to stain, pollute  
**maculōsus, a, um:** spotted  
**madeō, madēre, maduī:** to be wet  
**madidus, a, um:** wet  
**Maeonius, a, um:** of Maeonia, the eastern  
 part of Lydia in Asia Minor  
**maereō, maerēre:** to mourn, grieve  
**maestissimus, a, um:** very sad, very  
 gloomy  
**maestus, a, um:** sad, dejected  
**magicus, a, um:** relating to magic  
**magis:** (adv.) more, rather  
**magister, magistrī m.:** master, teacher  
**magnus, a, um:** big, great  
**maior, maius:** greater  
**malē:** (adv.) badly  
**malus, a, um:** bad, evil  
**mandātum, ī n.:** instruction, demand  
**maneō, manēre, mansī, mansum:** to remain,  
 stay  
**mānes, mānium m. pl.:** ghosts, souls of the  
 departed  
**manifestus, a, um:** clear, visible  
**mānō, mānāre, mānāvī, mānātum:** to pour,  
 shed  
**Mantō, Mantūs f.:** Manto, a Theban  
 prophetess  
**manus, ūs f.:** hand, band  
**marceō, marcēre:** to wither, be faint, be weak  
**mare, maris n.:** the sea  
**marītus, ī m.:** husband

- marmor, marmoris n.:** marble  
**marmoreus, a, um:** of marble  
**Mars, Martis m.:** Mars, the god of spring-time and war  
**Martius, a, um:** sacred to Mars, god of war  
**massa, ae f.:** a mass, lump  
**māter, mātris f.:** mother  
**māteria, ae f.:** matter, material  
**māternus, a, um:** of the mother, maternal  
**mātrōna, ae f.:** married woman, matron  
**Māvors, Māvortis m.:** archaic name for the god Mars  
**Māvortius, a, um:** of Mars, having to do with Mars  
**maximus, a, um:** greatest  
**Mēdēa, ae f.:** Medea, a princess of Colchis and a sorceress  
**medēns, medentis m.:** a physician  
**medicāmen, medicāminis n.:** drug, medicine, poison  
**medius, a, um:** middle  
**Medūsa, ae f.:** Medusa, a mortal Gorgon whose gaze causes petrification  
**Megara, ae f.:** Megara, a city in Greece  
**mel, mellis n.:** honey  
**membrum, ī n.:** limb  
**meminī, meminisse:** (defect. verb) to remember (+ gen.)  
**memor, memoris:** mindful, remembering  
**memorābilis, e:** memorable, remarkable  
**memoria, memoriae f.:** memory  
**memorō, memorāre, memorāvī, memorātum:** to recall, relate  
**mēns, mentis f.:** mind, reason, intellect  
**mensa, ae f.:** a table  
**Mensis, Mensis m.:** Month, divine representation of a month  
**Mercurius, ī m.:** Mercury, the god of messengers, thieves, and merchants  
**mereō, merēre, meruī, meritum:** to deserve, earn  
**mergō, mergere, mersi, mersum:** to sink, plunge, immerse  
**meritō:** (adv.) deservedly, justly  
**mersus, a, um:** sunk, overwhelmed  
**messor, messōris m.:** reaper, mower  
**metuō, metuere, metuī, metūtum:** to fear, be afraid of  
**metus, ūs m.:** fear, dread  
**meus, a, um:** (poss. adj.) my, mine  
**micō, micāre, micuī:** to vibrate, move rapidly, flicker  
**mīles, militis m.:** soldier  
**mille:** (indecl.) a thousand  
**mināx, minācis:** threatening  
**minimē:** (adv.) not at all  
**minimus, a, um:** smallest, least  
**Mīnōs, Mīnōis m.:** Minos, king of Crete  
**minuō, minuere, minuī, minūtum:** to lessen, diminish  
**minus:** (adv.) less  
**Minyae, ārum m. pl.:** the Minyans, the Argonauts  
**mīrābiliter:** (adv.) miraculously, wonderfully  
**mīror, mīrārī, mīrātus sum:** to admire, wonder at  
**misceō, miscēre, miscuī, mixtum:** to mingle, mix  
**miser, misera, miserum:** poor, wretched, pitiable  
**miserābilis, e:** pitiable, miserable, wretched  
**miserescō, miserescere:** to pity, have compassion for (+ gen.)  
**miserrimus, a, um:** very unhappy, very miserable  
**mittō, mittere, mīsī, missum:** to send  
**mixtus, a, um:** mixed  
**moderāmen, moderāminis n.:** a means of guiding, government  
**modo:** (adv.) only, just now, lately  
**moenia, ium n. pl.:** walls  
**mōles, mōlis f.:** weight, bulk  
**mōlīmen, mōlīminis n.:** great effort, exertion  
**mōlior, mōlīrī, mōlītus sum:** to set in motion, work at

**mollīō, mollīre, mollīvī, mollītum:** to soften  
**mollis, e:** soft, tender  
**mollitia, ae f.:** softness  
**mōmentum, ī n.:** movement  
**moneō, monēre, monuī, monitum:** to warn, admonish  
**mōns, montis m.:** mountain  
**monstrō, monstrāre, monstrāvī, monstrātum:** to show, point out, indicate  
**monstrum, ī n.:** monster, supernatural thing or event, wonder  
**mora, ae f.:** delay, pause  
**morbus, ī m.:** disease, illness  
**morior, morī, mortuus sum:** to die  
**moror, morārī, morātus sum:** to delay, linger  
**mors, mortis f.:** death  
**mortālis, e:** mortal, human  
**mortuus, a, um:** dead  
**mōs, mōris m.:** custom, habit  
**moveō, movēre, mōvī, mōtum:** to move, set in motion  
**mox:** (adv.) soon  
**Mulciber, Mulcibēris m.:** epithet of Vulcan, god of craftsmanship  
**multum:** (adv.) much, very much  
**multus, a, um:** many  
**mundus, ī m.:** world, universe  
**mūnus, mūneris n.:** office, charge, favor, gift  
**murmur, mumuris n.:** murmur, rumbling  
**mūrus, ī m.:** city wall  
**Mūsa, ae f.:** a Muse  
**musca, ae f.:** a fly  
**mūtātus, a, um:** changed, transformed  
**mūtō, mūtāre, mūtāvī, mūtātum:** to change  
**mūtus, a, um:** mute, silent, quiet  
**mūtuus, a, um:** reciprocal, mutual  
  
**Nāias, Nāiadis f.:** a Naiad, water nymph  
**nanciscor, nanciscī, nactus sum:** to meet, light upon  
**narrō, narrāre, narrāvī, narrātum:** to tell, relate  
**nāsus, ī m.:** a nose

**nāta, ae f.:** daughter  
**nātūra, ae f.:** nature  
**nātus, a, um:** born  
**nātus, ī m.:** son  
**nāvicula, ae f.:** little ship, boat  
**nāvigō, nāvigāre, nāvigāvī, nāvigātum:** to sail  
**nāvis, nāvis f.:** ship  
**nē:** (adv.) not  
**nebula, ae f.:** cloud, mist  
**nec:** (adv.) and not  
**necātus, a, um:** having been killed  
**necō, necāre, necāvī, necātum:** to kill, slay  
**nefandus, a, um:** impious, heinous  
**nefas n.:** (indecl.) a crime, abomination  
**negō, negāre, negāvī, negātum:** to deny  
**nēmō, nēminis m. or f.:** no one, nobody  
**nemorōsus, a, um:** wooded  
**nemus, nemoris n.:** wood, grove  
**nepos, nepōtis m.:** grandson, descendant  
**Neptūnus, ī m.:** Neptune, god of the sea  
**nēquīquam:** (adv.) in vain, to no purpose  
**Nēreus, ī m.:** Nereus, a god of the sea  
**nervus, ī m.:** sinew, bowstring  
**neuter, neutra, neutrum:** neither  
**nex, necis f.:** death  
**nexilis, e:** tied together  
**nexus, ūs m.:** a joint, entwining, connection  
**niger, nigra, nigrum:** black, dark  
**nihil n.:** (indecl.) nothing  
**Nīlus, ī m.:** Nile, a river in Egypt  
**nimbus, ī m.:** vapor, cloud  
**nimis:** (adv.) too much  
**nimium:** (adv.) excessively, too much  
**Niobē, ēs f.:** Niobe, a queen of Thebes born in Lydia  
**nisi:** (conj.) unless, if not  
**Nīsus, ī m.:** Nisus, king of Megara  
**nitidus, a, um:** shining, bright  
**niveus, a, um:** snowy, white  
**nix, nivis f.:** snow  
**nō, nāre, nāvī:** to swim  
**nōbilis, e:** well-known  
**noceō, nocēre, nocuī, nocitum:** to be harmful

**nōdōsus, a, um:** knotty  
**nōdus, ī m.:** knot  
**nōlō, nōlle, nōluī:** to be unwilling (nōlī = imperative)  
**nōmen, nōminis n.:** name  
**nōn:** (adv.) not  
**nōndum:** (adv.) not yet  
**nōnus, a, um:** ninth  
**nōs, nostrī/nostrum pl.:** (first person pron.)  
**nōbīs** (dat./abl.), **nōs** (acc.), we, us  
**noscō, noscere, nōvī, nōtum:** to become acquainted with, know  
**noster, nostra, nostrum:** (poss. adj.) our  
**nota, ae f.:** mark  
**nōtissimus, a, um:** most known, best known  
**notō, notāre, notāvī, notātum:** to mark  
**novus, a, um:** new, young  
**nox, noctis f.:** night  
**nūbes, nūbis f.:** cloud  
**nūbilum, ī n.:** cloud mass  
**nūbō, nūbere, nupsī, nuptum:** to cover, veil, marry (+ dat.)  
**nūdō, nūdāre, nūdāvī, nūdātum:** to strip, lay bare  
**nūdus, a, um:** naked  
**nullus, a, um:** none, not any  
**num:** (interrog.) introduces a question expecting a negative answer  
**nūmen, nūminis n.:** divinity, divine spirit  
**numerus, ī m.:** a number  
**numquam:** (adv.) never  
**nunc:** (adv.) now  
**nūpta, ae f.:** married woman, wife  
**nurus, ūs f.:** daughter-in-law  
**nūtō, nūtāre, nūtāvī, nūtātum:** to nod  
**nūtrix, nūtrīcis f.:** nurse  
**nympha, ae f.:** nymph  
**Nysaeus, a, um:** of Nysa, a region in Asia Minor  
  
**ō:** (interj.) oh!  
**obliquus, a, um:** indirect, on one side, slanting

**observō, observāre, observāvī, observātum:** to watch, regard, attend to  
**obstipescō, obstipescere, obstipuī:** to be amazed  
**obstō, obstāre, obstītī, obstātum:** to stand against, oppose (+ dat.)  
**obumbrō, obumbrāre, obumbrāvī, obumbrātum:** to overshadow, cover  
**occulō, occulere, occulūī, occultum:** to cover, hide  
**occupō, occupāre, occupāvī, occupātum:** to take hold of, seize, master  
**occurrō, occurrere, occurri, occursum:** to meet, appear  
**octāvus, a, um:** eighth  
**oculus, ī m.:** eye  
**ōdī, ōdisse:** (defect. verb) to hate  
**odiōsus, a, um:** hateful, despised  
**odium, ī n.:** hatred  
**odor, odōris m.:** smell  
**odōrō, odōrāre, odōrāvī, odōrātum:** to make odorous, make sweet-smelling  
**Oetaeus, a, um:** of Oeta, the mountain range between Thessaly and Macedonia  
**officiūm, ī n.:** duty, position, service  
**olīva, ae f.:** olive  
**olōrīnus, a, um:** belonging to a swan  
**Olympus, ī m.:** Mt. Olympus, home of the gods  
**ōmen, ōminis n.:** sign, omen  
**omnipotēns, omnipotentis:** all powerful  
**omnis, e:** every, all  
**onus, oneris n.:** burden, load  
**opifer, opifera, opiferum:** bringing aid, helpful  
**oppidum, ī n.:** town  
**ops, opis f.:** resource, help, assistance  
**optō, optāre, optāvī, optātum:** to desire, wish for  
**opus, operis n.:** work, art, workmanship  
**ōrāculum, ī n.:** oracle, divine utterance, place of prophecy  
**orbis lacteus:** Milky Way

**orbis, orbis m.:** circle, coil  
**orbus, a, um:** orphaned, childless  
**ordinātus, a, um:** ordered, organized  
**ordinō, ordināre, ordināvī, ordinātum:**  
 to put in order, arrange  
**ordo, ordinis m.:** row, line, order  
**Ōrithyia, ae f.:** Orithyia, a daughter of  
 Erechtheus  
**ōrnō, ōrnāre, ōrnāvī, ōrnātum:** to decorate  
**ōrō, ōrāre, ōrāvī, ōrātum:** to speak, beg, pray  
**ōs, ōris n.:** mouth, face  
**os, ossis n.:** bone  
**osculum, ī n.:** lips, mouth, kiss  
**ostendō, ostendere, ostendī, ostentum:** to  
 show, hold out, display  
**ostentum, ī n.:** marvel, portent  
**ostium, ī n.:** door, entrance, mouth  
**ovis, ovis f.:** sheep

**pābulum, ī n.:** food, nourishment  
**pācālis, e:** peaceful  
**paene:** (adv.) almost  
**Palātīnus, a, um:** of the Palatine, one of the  
 seven hills of Rome  
**palātum, ī n.:** palate, roof of the mouth  
**palla, ae f.:** long garment, cloak  
**Pallas, Palladis f.:** epithet of Athena/Minerva,  
 the goddess of weaving, wisdom, and  
 battles  
**palleō, pallēre, palluī:** to be pale, grow pale  
**pallidus, a, um:** pale  
**pallor, pallōris m.:** paleness  
**palma, ae f.:** palm of the hand  
**Pandīōn, Pandīōnis m.:** Pandion, father of  
 Procne and Philomela  
**pandō, pandere, pandī, passum:** to spread  
 out, extend  
**pap̄yrifer, pap̄yrifera, pap̄yriferum:**  
 papyrus-bearing  
**pār, paris:** equal, like  
**parātus, ūs m.:** preparation, apparel  
**parens, parentis m. or f.:** parent  
**pāreō, pārere, pārui, pāritum:** to be obedi-  
 ent to, submit to (+ dat.)

**pariō, parere, peperī, partum:** to bring  
 forth, produce  
**pariter:** (adv.) equally  
**Parnāsus, ī m.:** Parnassus, a mountain in  
 Phocis sacred to Apollo  
**parō, parāre, parāvī, parātum:** to prepare  
**pars, partis f.:** a part, portion  
**partim . . . partim:** (adv.) in part . . . in part  
**partus, ūs m.:** offspring, birth  
**parum:** (adv.) too little, not enough  
**parvus, a, um:** small, little  
**passus, ūs m.:** step, pace  
**pastor, pastōris m.:** shepherd, herdsman  
**patefaciō, patefacere, patefēcī, patefactum:**  
 to throw open, open, reveal  
**pateō, patēre, patuī:** to lie open, be accessible  
**pater, patris m.:** father  
**patera, ae f.:** a shallow dish, saucer  
**paternus, a, um:** fatherly, paternal  
**patior, patī, passus sum:** to suffer, allow,  
 experience, tolerate  
**patria, ae f.:** fatherland, native country  
**pātrius, a, um:** fatherly, paternal  
**patulus, a, um:** open, wide, broad  
**paucus, a, um:** few, small in number  
**paulātīm:** (adv.) little by little, gradually  
**pavefactus, a, um:** terrified  
**paveō, pavēre, pāvī:** to be afraid, quake  
**pax, pācis f.:** peace, tranquility  
**pectus, pectoris n.:** breast, chest  
**Pēgāsus, ī m.:** Pegasus, flying horse born  
 from Medusa  
**Peliās, Peliae m.:** Pelias, king of Thessaly  
**pellis, pellis f.:** skin, hide  
**pellō, pellere, pepulī, pulsum:** to beat, strike,  
 drive away  
**Penātēs, Penātium m. pl.:** household gods  
**pendēns, pendētis:** hanging  
**pendeō, pendēre, pependī:** to hang sus-  
 pended, suspend  
**Pēnēius, a, um:** of Peneus, a river-god  
**penetrō, penetrāre, penetrāvī, penetrātum:**  
 to pass through, sink deep into  
**penna, ae f.:** a feather, wing

**pennātus, a, um:** winged, feathered

**Penthēūs, ī m.:** Pentheus, a grandson of Cadmus

**per:** (prep. + acc.) by, through, because of  
**percalescō, percalescere, percaluī:** to become warm

**percutiō, percutere, percussī, percussum:** to strike, beat

**perdō, perdere, perdidī, perditum:** to ruin, destroy

**pererrō, pererrāre, pererrāvī, pererrātum:** to wander through

**perferō, perferre, pertulī, perlātum:** to carry all the way

**perficiō, perficere, perfēcī, perfectum:** to complete, perfect

**perfundō, perfundere, perfūdī, perfusum:** to steep, pour over, fill, spread

**perhorrescō, perhorrescere, perhorruī:** to shudder, be terrified at

**periculum, ī n.:** danger, risk

**perlūcidus, a, um:** shining, bright, transparent

**permulceō, permulcēre, permulsi, permulsum:** to stroke, soften

**perpetuus, a, um:** continuous, unending

**Perseus, ī m.:** Perseus, a son of Jupiter

**perspiciō, perspicere, perspexī, perspectum:** to see through, observe closely

**perstō, perstāre, perstīfī, perstātum:** to stand firm

**perterritus, a, um:** frightened, terrified

**pervenīō, pervenīre, pervēnī, perventum:** to come to, reach

**pēs, pedis m.:** the foot

**petō, petere, petivī, petītum:** to seek, demand, beg

**Phaethōn, Phaethōntis m.:** Phaethon, son of Clymene and Sōl

**pharetra, ae f.:** quiver

**pharetrātus, a, um:** wearing a quiver

**Philomēla, ae f.:** Philomela, daughter of Pandion

**Phōcis, Phōcidis f.:** Phocis, a district in central Greece

**Phoebēius, a, um:** of Phoebus, of Apollo

**Phoebeus, a, um:** of Phoebus, of Apollo

**Phoebus, ī m.:** Phoebus, epithet of Apollo

**Phoenīcēs, um m. pl.:** Phoenicians

**Phrygia, ae f.:** Phrygia, a region of Asia Minor

**Phrygius, a, um:** of Phrygia

**picea, ae f.:** spruce-fir tree

**pietās, pietātis f.:** sense of duty, piety

**pignus, pignoris n.:** pledge, assurance

**pingō, pingere, pinxī, pictum:** to paint, depict

**piscātor, piscātōris m.:** fisherman

**Piscēs, Piscium m. pl.:** Pisces (zodiac sign), fish

**piscīna, ae f.:** a fishpond, reservoir

**pius, a, um:** dutiful, devoted to the gods

**plācātus, a, um:** quiet, peaceful, calm

**placeō, placēre, placuī, placitum:** to please, be agreeable to (+ dat.)

**placidus, a, um:** quiet, gentle

**plācō, plācāre, plācāvī, plācātum:** to soothe, calm

**plāga, ae f.:** a blow, wound

**Plēias, Plēiadis f.:** one of the Pleiades

**plēnus, a, um:** full

**plūma, ae f.:** feather, plumage

**plumbeus, a, um:** made of lead

**plūrimus, a, um:** very much, very many

**plūs, plūris:** more

**Plūto, Plūtōnis m.:** Pluto, god of the Underworld

**pluvia, ae f.:** rain

**pluvius, a, um:** rainy

**poena, ae f.:** punishment

**poēta, ae m.:** poet

**pollex, pollicis m.:** thumb

**polliceor, pollicērī, pollicitus sum:** to promise, offer

**pōmārium, ī n.:** orchard, garden for fruit

**Pōmōna, ae f.:** Pomona, the goddess of fruit-trees

**pōmum, ī n.:** fruit

**pōnō, pōnere, posuī, positum:** to place, put, put aside

**pontifex, pontificis m.:** a priest  
**pontus, ī m.:** sea, ocean  
**populus, ī m.:** people  
**porrectus, a, um:** stretched out  
**porrigō, porrigere, porrexī, porrectum:** to lay low, stretch out, extend  
**porta, ae f.:** a gate, door  
**portendō, portendere, portendī, portentum:** to indicate, predict  
**portō, portāre, portāvī, portātum:** to bring, carry  
**portus, ūs m.:** port  
**poscō, poscere, poposci:** to request, ask for, demand  
**possideō, possidere, possēdī, possessum:** to possess, hold  
**possum, posse, potuī:** to be able, have in one's power  
**post:** (prep. + acc.) behind, after  
**postea:** (adv.) afterwards  
**postis, postis m.:** a door post  
**postquam:** (conj.) after  
**postulō, postulāre, postulāvī, postulātum:** to demand, claim, request  
**potentia, ae f.:** power, ability  
**potior, potiri, potitus sum:** to obtain, possess (+ acc. or abl.)  
**praecipuus, a, um:** peculiar, excellent, distinguished  
**praecutiō, praecutere, praecussī, praecussum:** to shake in front  
**praeda, ae f.:** spoil, plunder  
**praedicō, praedicere, praedixī, praedictum:** to prophesy, foretell  
**praemium, ī n.:** profit, reward  
**praemoneō, praemonēre, praemonuī, praemonitum:** to warn beforehand  
**praemonitus, ūs m.:** prediction, warning  
**praenuntius, a, um:** foretelling  
**praepōnō, praepōnere, praeposuī, praepositum:** to put before  
**praesāgus, a, um:** foreboding, predicting  
**praescius, a, um:** having foreknowledge, prescient

**praesignis, e:** remarkable, illustrious  
**praestāns, praestantis:** standing before, excelling (+ dat.)  
**praeter:** (prep. + acc.) besides, except  
**precor, precari, precāus sum:** to beg, entreat, pray  
**premō, premere, pressī, pressum:** to press, pursue closely  
**pretiosior, ius:** more precious, more valuable  
**prex, precis f.:** prayer, plea  
**prīmum:** (adv.) at first, first  
**prīmus, a, um:** first, foremost  
**prior, ius:** former, previous  
**priscus, a, um:** old, ancient  
**pristinus, a, um:** former, earlier, of yesterday  
**prō:** (prep. + abl.) in place of, on behalf of  
**probō, probāre, probāvī, probātum:** to approve  
**Proca, ae m.:** Proca, a king of the Italian city of Alba  
**procer, proceris m.:** a chief, prince, noble  
**Procnē, ēs f.:** Procne, daughter of Pandion  
**Procris, Procris f.:** Procris, a daughter of Erechtheus  
**procul:** (adv.) far away, at a distance, from afar  
**profānus, a, um:** not sacred, uninitiated, ordinary  
**prōfero, prōferre, prōtulī, prōlātum:** to carry forward, bring forth, offer  
**prōgeniēs, ēī f.:** offspring  
**prohibeō, prohibēre, prohibuī, prohibitum:** to hold back, restrain, prevent  
**prōicio, prōicere, prōieci, prōiectum:** to throw forward, fling away  
**prōles, prōlis f.:** offspring, descendants  
**prōmittō, prōmittere, prōmisi, prōmissum:** to promise  
**prōmō, prōmere, prompsi, promptum:** to bring forth, produce  
**prōnus, a, um:** stooped forward, leaning forward  
**prope:** (adv.) nearby, near

**properō, properāre, properāvī, proper-  
ātum:** to hasten

**Prōserpina, ae f.:** Proserpina, goddess of  
springtime

**prospectō, prospectāre, prospectāvī, pros-  
pectātum:** to gaze out at, look out on

**prōtinus:** (adv.) further, immediately

**pudendus, a, um:** deserving of shame,  
shameful

**pudīcus, a, um:** chaste, modest

**pudor, pudōris m.:** modesty, shame

**puella, ae f.:** girl

**puellāris, e:** girlish

**puer, puerī m.:** boy

**pugnō, pugnāre, pugnāvī, pugnātum:** to  
fight

**pugnus, ī m.:** the fist

**pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum:** beautiful

**pulcherrimus, a, um:** most beautiful

**pulsō, pulsāre, pulsāvī, pulsātum:** to beat

**pulvereus, a, um:** dusty

**pulverulentus, a, um:** dusty

**pulvīnar, pulvīnāris n.:** cushioned seat, seat  
of honor

**pūniceus, a, um:** red, purple

**pūniō, pūnīre, pūnīvī, pūnitum:** to punish

**puppis, puppis f.:** stern of a ship

**purpura, ae f.:** purple

**purpureus, a, um:** purple, crimson

**pūrus, a, um:** pure, clean, simple, bare

**putātor, putātoris m.:** pruner of trees

**putō, putāre, putāvī, putātum:** to think

**pyrōpus, ī m.:** bronze

**Pyrrha, ae f.:** Pyrrha, a daughter of  
Epimetheus

**Pythia, Pythiōrum n.:** the Pythian Games

**Pythōn, Pythōnis m.:** Python, a huge serpent

**quā:** (adv.) where

**quācumque:** (adv.) wherever

**quadrigae, ārum f. pl.:** four-horse chariot

**quaerō, quaerere, quaesivī, quaesitum:** to  
search for, seek

**quālis, e:** of what sort, like

**quam:** (adv.) than, as, how

**quamquam:** (conj.) although

**quamvis:** (conj.) although

**quandō:** (adv.) when

**quantus, a, um:** of what size, how great,  
how much

**quasi:** (conj. and adv.) as if

**quater:** (adv.) four times

**questus, ūs m.:** complaining, complaint

**quia:** (conj.) because

**quī, quae, quod:** (interrog. adj.) which?  
what? what kind of?

**quī, quae, quod:** (rel. pron.) who, which,  
what, that

**quid:** (interrog. adv.) why

**quidem:** (adv.) surely, in fact, indeed

**quinque:** (indecl. numer.) five

**quinquennium, ī n.:** a period of five years

**Quirīnus, ī m.:** Quirinus, a god with whom  
the deified Romulus was identified

**quis, quid:** (interrog. pron.) who, what

**quisquam, quaequam, quidquam or  
quicquam:** anyone, anything

**quisque, quaeque, quidque:** (pron.) each,  
every

**quisquis, quaequae, quidquid:** whoever,  
whichever, whatever

**quod:** (conj.) because

**quōmodo:** (adv.) in what manner, how

**quondam:** (adv.) once, formerly

**quoniam:** (conj.) since, because

**quoque:** (conj.) also, too

**quotiens:** (adv.) how often, how many

**quotiescumque:** (conj.) however often

**radiāns, radiantis:** shining, gleaming

**radiō, radiāre, radiāvī, radiātum:** shine,  
radiate

**radius, ī m.:** ray, spoke, shuttle for weaving

**rādix, rādīcis f.:** root

**rāmus, ī m.:** branch

**rapidus, a, um:** swift, hurrying

**rapiō, rapere, rapuī, raptum:** to seize, take,  
rape

**raptor, raptōris m.:** robber, kidnapper, rapist  
**rāstrum, ī n.:** rake, hoe  
**ratis, ratis f.:** raft, boat  
**recidō, recidere, reccidī, recāsūrum:** to fall back  
**recessus, ūs m.:** a recess  
**recipiō, recipere, recēpī, receptum:** to take back, recover  
**reclūdō, reclūdere, reclūsī, reclūsum:** to open, reveal, disclose  
**rēctor, rēctoris m.:** ruler  
**recubō, recubāre, recubāvī, recubātum:** to lie back, incline  
**recurvus, a, um:** turned back, bent  
**recūsō, recūsāre, recūsāvī, recūsātum:** to reject, refuse  
**redditus, a, um:** given back, restored  
**reddō, reddere, reddidī, redditum:** to give back, restore, return to  
**redeō, redīre, redī, reditum:** to come back, return  
**redūcō, redūcere, reduxī, reductum:** to draw backwards, lead back  
**referō, referre, rettulī, relātum:** to bring back, carry back, return, report  
**reflectō, reflectere, reflexī, reflectum:** to turn back, reflect  
**refringō, refrigere, refrēgī, refrāctum:** to break open  
**refugiō, refugere, refugī:** to flee, escape  
**rēgālis, e:** royal  
**rēgia, ae f.:** palace, royal house  
**rēgina, ae f.:** queen  
**regnum, ī n.:** rule, kingship, kingdom  
**regō, regere, rēxī, rēctum:** to rule, control  
**relegō, relegere, relēgī, relectum:** to gather again, go over again  
**religō, religāre, religāvī, religātum:** to tie  
**relinquō, relinquere, relīquī, relictum:** to leave behind  
**remedium, ī n.:** remedy, relief  
**remeō, remeāre, remeāvī, remeātum:** to return, go back

**rēmex, rēmigis m.:** bench of oarsmen, rower  
**rēmigium, ī n.:** rowing, the oars, oarsmen  
**reminiscor, reminisci:** to recollect, remember  
**remittō, remittere, remīsī, remissum:** to send back, let go back  
**removeō, removēre, remōvī, remōtum:** to move back, withdraw  
**reor, rērī, ratus sum:** to calculate, judge, reckon  
**repellō, repellere, reppulī, repulsum:** to drive back, drive away  
**repente:** (adv.) suddenly  
**repetō, repetere, repetīvī, repetitum:** to seek again, begin again, repeat  
**repleō, replēre, replēvī, replētum:** to refill, fill up  
**requiēs, requiētis f.:** rest  
**requiescō, requiescere, requiēvī, requiētum:** to rest  
**rēs Rōmāna, rei Rōmānae f.:** Roman state  
**rēs, rei f.:** a thing, affair, matter  
**reserātus, a, um:** unbarred, opened  
**resideō, residēre, resēdi, resessum:** to sit back  
**resolvō, resolvere, resolvī, resolūtum:** to untie, release, open  
**resonō, resonāre, resonāvī, resonātum:** to resound, echo  
**respondeō, respondēre, respondī, responsum:** to answer to, reply  
**restō, restāre, restitī:** to remain, stand against, oppose (+ dat.)  
**rēsūmō, rēsūmere, rēsumpsī, rēsumptum:** to take again, resume  
**resurgō, resurgere, resurrexī, resurrectum:** to rise again, appear again  
**rēte, rētis n.:** net  
**retinācula, ōrum n. pl.:** rope, cable  
**retractō, retractāre, retractāvī, retractātum:** to undertake again, recall  
**retrō:** (adv.) backwards  
**reveniō, revenīre, revēnī, reventum:** to come back, return

**revirescō, revirescere, revirescui:** to grow  
strong again

**revocō, revocāre, revocāvī, revocātum:** to  
call back, recall

**rēx, rēgis m.:** king

**Rhēa Silvia, Rhēae Silviae f.:** Rhea Silvia,  
the mother of Romulus and Remus

**rīdeō, rīdēre, rīsī, rīsum:** to smile,  
laugh at

**rigēō, rigēre:** to be stiff, to be hard

**rīpa, ae f.:** river bank, shore

**rītus, ūs m.:** religious ceremony, rite

**rōbur, rōboris n.:** oak

**rogō, rogāre, rogāvī, rogātum:** to ask

**Rōma, ae f.:** Rome

**Rōmānus, a, um:** of Rome

**Rōmuleus, a, um:** of Romulus

**Rōmulus, ī m.:** Romulus, the first king of  
Rome

**rōrāns, rōrantis:** causing dew, dripping,  
being moist

**rostrum, ī n.:** beak, snout, muzzle

**rota, ae f.:** wheel

**rubens, rubentis:** red

**rubor, rubōris m.:** redness

**rudis, e:** unworked, crude

**rūga, ae f.:** wrinkle

**rūmor, rūmōris m.:** a rumor, report

**rumpō, rumpere, rūpī, ruptum:** to break,  
shatter, burst

**ruō, ruere, ruī, rutum:** to rush

**rursus:** (adv.) again

**rūs, rūris n.:** country, land

**saburra, ae f.:** sand, ballast

**sacer, sacra, sacrum:** sacred

**sacerdōs, sacerdotis m. or f.:** priest, priestess

**sacra, sacrōrum n. pl.:** sacred rites

**sacrificō, sacrificāre, sacrificāvī,  
sacrificātum:** to offer sacrifice

**Saeculum, ī n.:** Generation, divine represen-  
tation of a generation

**saepe:** (adv.) often

**saepes, is f.:** a hedge

**saepius:** (adv.) more often

**saevior, ius:** more savage

**saevitia, ae f.:** ferocity, savagery

**saevus, a, um:** savage, fierce

**sagitta, ae f.:** arrow

**Sagittārius, ī m.:** Sagittarius (zodiac sign),  
an archer

**salamandra, ae f.:** salamander

**Salmacis, Salmacidis f.:** Salmacis, a nymph  
in Caria

**salus, salūtis f.:** health, welfare, safety

**salūtifer, salūtiferī m.:** bringer of health

**salūtō, salūtāre, salūtāvī, salūtātum:** to  
greet, say goodbye to

**sanctus, a, um:** holy, sacred

**sanguineus, a, um:** bloody

**sanguis, sanguinis m.:** blood, vigor, strength

**saniēs, saniei f.:** diseased blood, poison

**sānō, sānāre, sānāvī, sānātum:** to cure,  
restore to health

**sānus, a, um:** healthy, sound

**satiātus, a, um:** satisfied, sated

**satiō, satiāre, satiāvī, satiātum:** to satisfy, fill

**satis:** (indecl. adj. and adv.) enough

**Sāturnia, ae f.:** Saturnia, epithet of Juno,  
daughter of Saturn

**satus, a, um:** sprung, born, sown

**satyrus, ī m.:** a satyr, goat-man

**saxum, ī n.:** rock, crag

**scāla, ae f.:** ladder, flight of stairs

**scelerātus, a, um:** wicked, profane

**scelus, sceleris n.:** crime, wicked deed, evil

**scēptrum, ī n.:** scepter, royal staff

**scindō, scindere, scidī, scissum:** to cut, tear  
asunder

**sciō, scīre, scīvī, scītum:** to know

**scopulus, ī m.:** boulder

**Scorpiō, Scorpionis m.:** Scorpio (zodiac  
sign), a scorpion

**scrobis, scrobis m.:** ditch, trench

**Scylla, ae f.:** Scylla, daughter of Nisus

**secō, secāre, secuī, sectum:** to cut

**secūris, is f.:** an axe, hatchet

**secus:** (adv.) otherwise

- sed:** (conj.) but  
**sedeō, sedēre, sēdī, sessum:** to sit  
**sēdēs, sēdis f.:** seat  
**sēligō, sēligere, sēlēgī, sēlectum:** to choose, select  
**sella, ae f.:** seat  
**semel:** (adv.) once  
**Semelē, Semelēs f.:** Semele, a daughter of Cadmus  
**sēmen, sēminis n.:** seed, child  
**sēmilacer, sēmilacera, sēmilacerum:** half-mangled  
**sēmivir, sēmivirī m.:** a half-man, effeminate man  
**semper:** (adv.) always  
**senātus, ūs m.:** the senate  
**senecta, ae f.:** old age  
**senectus, senectūtis f.:** old age  
**senex, senis m.:** old man  
**senilis, e:** aged, old  
**sententia, ae f.:** opinion, thought  
**sentīō, sentīre, sensī, sensum:** to feel, experience, perceive  
**sēparātio, sēparātiōnis f.:** severance, separation  
**sēparō, sēparāre, sēparāvī, sēparātum:** to disjoin, sever, separate  
**septem:** (indecl. numer.) seven  
**septemfluis, a, um:** flowing sevenfold, seven-mouthed  
**sequor, sequī, secūtus sum:** to follow, pursue  
**sermo, sermōnis m.:** talk, conversation  
**serō, serere, seruī, sertum:** to connect, bind together, weave  
**serpēns, serpentis f. or m.:** creeping thing, snake  
**serpō, serpere, serpsī, serptum:** to crawl, creep  
**sertum, ī n.:** wreath, woven garland  
**sērus, a, um:** late, advanced  
**serva, ae f.:** slave  
**servātor, servātōris m.:** savior  
**servō, servāre, servāvī, servātum:** to keep, save, preserve  
**sex:** (indecl. numer.) six  
**sī:** (conj.) if  
**sībilō, sībilāre, sībilāvī, sībilātum:** to hiss  
**sībilus, a, um:** hissing, whistling  
**sīc:** (adv.) thus  
**siccō, siccāre, siccāvī, siccātum:** to dry, dry up  
**Sīcelis, Sicelidis:** of Sicily  
**sīdereus, a, um:** belonging to the stars  
**sīdus, sīderis n.:** star, constellation  
**signum, ī n.:** sign, mark, statue  
**silentium, ī n.:** silence  
**sileō, silēre, siluī:** to be silent  
**silex, silicis m.:** stone  
**silva, ae f.:** wood, forest  
**similis, e:** like, similar to (+ dat.)  
**simul atque:** (conj.) as soon as  
**simul:** (adv.) at the same time  
**simulācrum, ī n.:** image, likeness  
**simulō, simulāre, simulāvī, simulātum:** to make like  
**sine:** (prep. + abl.) without  
**sinister, sinistra, sinistrum:** left, on the left  
**sinō, sinere, sīvī, situs:** to let alone, allow, permit  
**sinus, ūs m.:** a bending, fold, pocket, lap  
**sistō, sistere, stitī:** to stand, cause to stand still, stop  
**sitis, sitis f.:** thirst  
**situs, a, um:** situated, buried  
**situs, ūs m.:** decay, neglect  
**sīve/seu . . . sīve/seu:** (conj.) whether . . . or  
**smaragdus, ī m.:** emerald  
**socer, socerī m.:** father-in-law  
**socius, a, um:** sharing, companion  
**sōl, sōlis m.:** sun  
**soleō, solēre, solitus sum:** to be accustomed  
**solidus, a, um:** solid  
**solitus, a, um:** accustomed, usual  
**solium, ī n.:** seat  
**sollertia, ae f.:** cleverness  
**sollertius:** (adv.) more skillfully  
**sollicitō, sollicitāre, sollicitāvī, sollicitātum:** to move violently, incite, seek to obtain by bribery

**solum, ī n.:** floor, bottom  
**sōlus, a, um:** alone, only  
**solūtus, a, um:** loose, loosened, unbound  
**solvō, solve, solvī, solūtum:** to loosen, dissolve, set free  
**somnium, ī n.:** dream  
**somnus, ī m.:** sleep  
**sonō, sonāre, sonuī, sonitum:** to make a noise, sound  
**sonus, ī m.:** a sound, noise  
**sordidus, a, um:** dirty, foul, sordid  
**soror, sorōris f.:** sister  
**sors, sortis f.:** a lot, fortune, oracular response  
**spargō, spargere, sparsī, sparsum:** to sprinkle, strew, scatter  
**sparsus, a, um:** strewn, scattered  
**spatior, spatiārī, spatiātus sum:** to spread out, expand  
**spatium, ī n.:** space, extent  
**speciēs, speciēī f.:** view, sight, appearance  
**speciōsus, a, um:** beautiful, splendid  
**spectābilis, e:** visible, worth looking at  
**spectō, spectāre, spectāvī, spectātum:** to look at, observe, behold  
**spēlunca, ae f.:** cave  
**spērātus, a, um:** hoped for  
**spernō, spernere, sprēvī, sprētum:** to put away, reject, scorn, despise  
**spēs, eī f.:** hope  
**sphaera, ae f.:** globe, sphere  
**spīceus, a, um:** of corn  
**splendidus, a, um:** splendid, bright, distinguished  
**spoliō, spoliāre, spoliāvī, spoliātum:** strip, despoil, rob  
**spolium, ī n.:** spoil, booty  
**spūma, ae f.:** foam  
**spūmō, spūmare, spūmāvī, spūmātum:** to foam  
**squālēō, squālēre, squālūī:** to be stiff, be dirty  
**squāma, ae f.:** scale  
**squāmōsus, a, um:** scaly  
**stabulum, ī n.:** quarters, stable, brothel

**stagnum, ī n.:** standing water, pond  
**stāmen, stāminis n.:** the vertical warp on a loom, woven web, wool threads  
**statim:** (adv.) immediately  
**statua, ae f.:** statue, image  
**statuō, statuere, statuī, statūtum:** to set up, fix upright  
**stella comans, stellae comantis f.:** a hairy star, a comet  
**stēlla, ae f.:** star  
**sternō, sternere, strāvī, strātum:** to spread, make (a bed)  
**stillō, stillāre, stillāvī, stillātum:** to drip  
**stimulus, ī m.:** spur, cattle prod  
**stīpō, stīpare, stīpāvī, stīpātum:** to press around, crowd  
**stipula, ae f.:** stalk of grain, grain-stubble  
**stō, stāre, stetī, statum:** to stand  
**strātum, ī n.:** coverlet, horsecloth  
**strīdēns, strīdentis:** hissing, vibrating  
**strīdō, strīdere, strīdī:** to make a harsh noise, creak, hiss  
**stringō, stringere, strixī, strictum:** to pull out (a weapon), tighten  
**studiōsior, ius:** more diligent about, more eager for (+ gen.)  
**studium, ī n.:** eagerness, pursuit  
**stultus, a, um:** foolish, silly  
**stupeō, stupēre, stupuī:** to be struck dumb, be stunned  
**Stygius, a, um:** Stygian, of Styx  
**Styx, Stygis f.:** Styx, a river in the Underworld  
**suādeō, suādēre, suāsī, suāsum:** to advise, recommend, persuade  
**sub:** (prep. + abl.) under  
**subeō, subīre, subīī or subīvī, subitum:** to go under, pass under  
**subigō, subigere, subēgī, subāctum:** to work up, work into a smooth thread  
**subitō:** (adv.) suddenly  
**sublīmīis, e:** lofty, exalted, elevated  
**successus, ūs m.:** outcome, success  
**sūcus, ī m.:** juice, sap

**suī (gen.):** (reflex. pron. sing. or pl.) **sibi** (dat.), **sē** (acc.) himself, herself, itself, themselves

**sulcō, sulcāre, sulcāvī, sulcātum:** to furrow, wrinkle

**sulfur, sulfuris n.:** brimstone, sulfur

**sum, esse, fuī, futūrum:** to be

**summa, ae f.:** a summary, most important point, sum total

**summoveō, summovere, summōvī,**

**summōtum:** to move up from below, drive off, remove

**summus, a, um:** highest

**sūmō, sūmere, sumpsī, sumptum:** to take up, assume, select

**super:** (prep. + acc.) over, above

**superbus, a, um:** arrogant

**superēmineō, superēminēre, superēminuī:** to overtop, stand above

**superō, superāre, superāvī, superātum:** to overcome, prevail, be greater than

**supersum, superesse, superfuī, super-futūrum:** to be above, remain

**superus, a, um:** high, supreme, situated above

**supervolō, supervolāre, supervolāvī,**

**supervolātum:** to fly above

**supplex, supplicis m.:** a suppliant, petitioner

**supplicō, supplicāre, supplicāvī, supplicātum:** to worship, entreat (+ dat.)

**suppōnō, suppōnere, supposuī, suppositum:** to place under, bury, sow

**surgō, surgere, surrexī, surrectum:** to elevate, rise, arise

**supprimō, suppressere, suppressī, suppressum:** to block, check, push down

**suspendō, suspendere, suspendī, suspensum:** to hang, hang up, suspend

**suspīrō, suspīrāre, suspīrāvī, suspīrātum:** to take a deep breath, sigh

**sustineō, sustinēre, sustenuī, sustentum:** to hold up, carry, sustain

**suus, a, um:** (reflex. poss. adj.) his, her, its own

**tābēs, tābis f.:** a wasting away, melting, pestilence

**taciturnus, a, um:** quiet, silent

**tacitus, a, um:** silent

**tactus, ūs m.:** touch

**taeda, ae f.:** torch

**tālis, e:** such, of such a kind

**tam:** (adv.) so, to such a degree

**tamen:** (conj.) however, nevertheless

**tangō, tangere, tetigī, tactum:** to touch, reach, arrive at

**Tantalus, ī:** Tantalus, a king of Lydia

**tantum:** (adv.) only, to such a degree

**tantus, a, um:** so much, so great

**Tartara, ōrum n. pl.:** Tartarus, the infernal regions

**Tartareus, a, um:** of Tartarus, a region in the Underworld

**Taurus, ī m.:** Taurus (zodiac sign), a bull

**tectum, ī n.:** roof, building

**tegō, tegere, texī, tectum:** to cover, surround

**tegumen, teguminis n.:** a covering

**tēla, ae f.:** that which is woven, web, warp, loom

**tellūs, tellūris f.:** earth, ground

**tēlum, ī n.:** dart, arrow, spear

**tēmō, tēmōnis m.:** beam, yoke

**temperō, temperāre, temperāvī, temperātum:** to govern, manage

**templum, ī n.:** temple

**temptāmentum, ī n.:** a trial, attempt

**temptō, temptāre, temptāvī, temptātum:** to attempt, try

**tempus, temporis n.:** temple, brow, time

**tenax, tenācis:** holding fast, clinging

**tendō, tendere, tetendī, tentum and tensum:** to stretch out, extend

**tenebrae, ārum f. pl.:** shadows, shade, darkness

**teneō, tenēre, tenuī, tentum:** to hold

**tener, tenera, tenerum:** soft, delicate, youthful

**tentōrium, ī n.:** tent

**tenuis, e:** thin, fine

**tenuissimus, a, um:** very fine, most delicate  
**tepidus, a, um:** lukewarm, tepid

**ter:** (adv.) three times

**teres, teretis:** rounded, polished, smooth

**Tēreus, ī m.:** Tereus, husband of Procne

**tergum, ī n.:** back

**terra, ae f.:** land

**terrēnus, a, um:** earthen, of the earth

**terreō, terrēre, terruī, territum:** to terrify,  
 alarm

**terribilis, e:** dreadful, frightful

**territus, a, um:** thoroughly scared

**terror, terrōris m.:** fright, dread, object  
 which causes fear

**tertius, a, um:** third

**texō, texere, texuī, textum:** to weave

**thalamus, ī m.:** bedroom, marriage bed

**Thēbae, ārum f. pl.:** Thebes, a city in  
 Boeotia

**Thēbāis, Thēbāidis f.:** a Theban woman

**Thēbānus, a, um:** of Thebes, Theban

**Themis, Themis f.:** Themis, a Greek goddess  
 of the earth and justice

**Thrācia, ae f.:** Thrace

**Thrācius, a, um:** of Thrace

**Thrax, Thrācis m.:** of Thrace

**Thrēicius, a, um:** of Thrace, a region north of  
 Greece

**Tiberinus, a, um:** of the Tiber River

**tibia, ae f.:** flute, pipe

**tignum, ī n.:** beam, ceiling beam

**timeō, timēre, timuī:** to fear

**timor, timōris m.:** fear, dread

**tingō, tingere, tinxī, tinctum:** to wet,  
 moisten, dye, imbue

**Tiresiās, ae m.:** Tiresias, a man known for  
 wisdom

**titulus, ī m.:** glory, title, honor

**toga, ae f.:** the toga, garment worn by  
 Roman men

**tolerō, tolerāre, tolerāvī, tolerātum:** to  
 endure, withstand

**tollō, tollere, sustulī, sublātum:** to raise,  
 lift up, remove, destroy

**tondeō, tondēre, totondī, tonsum:** to shear,  
 clip, shave

**tonitrus, ūs m.:** thunder

**tonō, tonāre, tonuī, tonitum:** to thunder

**torpor, torpōris m.:** sluggishness, dullness

**torqueō, torquēre, torsi, tortum:** to twist,  
 turn

**torreō, torrēre, torruī, tostum:** to burn, roast

**torus, ī m.:** couch, bed, marriage bed

**torvus, a, um:** fierce

**tot:** (adv.) so many

**totidem:** (indecl. adj.) just as many

**tōtus, a, um:** whole

**tractus, ūs m.:** a pulling

**trādō, trādere, trādidī, trāditum:** to hand  
 over

**trahō, trahere, traxī, tractum:** to draw, drag,  
 take

**trāiciō, trāicere, trāieci, trāiectum:** to  
 throw, pierce, penetrate

**transcribō, transcribere, transcripsi,  
 transcriptum:** to write over, transfer,  
 convey

**translūceō, translūcere:** to shine across,  
 shine through

**tremō, tremere, tremuī:** to shake, quiver,  
 tremble

**tremor, tremōris m.:** shaking, quivering,  
 tremor

**trepidō, trepidāre, trepidāvī, trepidātum:**  
 to be agitated

**trēs, tria:** three

**triplex, triplicis:** triple

**tristis, e:** sad

**triumphō, triumphāre, triumphāvī,  
 triumphātum:** to celebrate a triumph,  
 gain victory

**triumphus, ī m.:** a triumphal procession,  
 victory

**trucīdo, trucīdāre, trucīdāvī, trucīdātum:**  
 to slaughter

**trūdō, trūdere, trūsī, trūsum:** to thrust,  
 push forth

**truncus, ī m.:** trunk of a tree

**tū, tuī:** (second person sing. pron.) **tibi** (dat.), **tē** (acc./abl.), you  
**tuba, ae f.:** military horn  
**tum:** (adv.) then, at that time  
**tumeō, tumēre, tumuī:** to swell, be puffed up  
**tumulus, ī m.:** hill, burial mound  
**tunc:** (adv.) then  
**turba, ae f.:** crowd, mob  
**turbātus, a, um:** troubled, disturbed, agitated  
**turbō, turbinis m.:** whirlwind  
**turpis, e:** ugly, foul, shameful  
**turpiter:** (adv.) in shame  
**turris, turris f.:** a tower, citadel  
**tūs, tūris n.:** frankincense  
**tūtus, a, um:** safe  
**tuus, a, um:** (poss. adj.) your  
**tyrannis, tyrannidis f.:** tyranny, despotic rule  
**tyrannus, ī m.:** an absolute ruler, tyrant  
**Tyrius, a, um:** of Tyre, a Phoenician city, purple  
**Tyrrhēnus, a, um:** of Etruria, Etruscan  
  
**ūber, ūberis n.:** udder  
**ubi:** (adv.) when, where  
**ubique:** (adv.) everywhere  
**Ulixes, Ulixis m.:** Ulysses, the Greek hero Odysseus  
**ullus, a, um:** any, anyone  
**ulmus, ī f.:** elm  
**ulterius:** (adv.) further, for a longer time  
**ultimus, a, um:** last, final  
**ultrā:** (adv.) beyond, further  
**ululāns, ululantis:** producing howls, yelling loudly  
**ululātus, ūs f.:** a howling, shrieking  
**ululō, ululāre, ululāvī, ululātum:** to howl  
**umbra, ae f.:** shade, shadow, dead spirit  
**umerus, ī m.:** upper arm, shoulder  
**ūmidus, a, um:** moist  
**ūmor, ūmōris m.:** moisture, fluid  
**ūnā:** (adv.) together  
**unda, ae f.:** water, wave  
**unde:** (adv.) from where  
**undique:** (adv.) from everywhere

**ūnus, a, um:** one, single  
**urbs, urbis f.:** city  
**urna, ae f.:** water jar, urn  
**ursa, ae f.:** bear  
**usque:** (adv.) as far as, all the way to, continuously  
**ūsus, ūs m.:** practical experience, use  
**ut:** (adv.) as, just as  
**uterque, utraque, utrumque:** each of two, both  
**uterus, ī m.:** belly, womb  
**ūtilis, e:** useful, beneficial, profitable  
**ūtor, ūtī, ūsus sum:** to use (+ abl.)  
**ūva, ae f.:** grape  
**uxor, uxōris f.:** wife  
  
**vacō, vacāre, vacāvī, vacātum:** to be empty  
**vacuus, a, um:** empty, void  
**vādō, vādere:** to go, hasten  
**vāgīna, ae f.:** sheath  
**vagō, vagāre, vagāvī, vagātum:** to wander, ramble  
**valdē:** (adv.) intensely, greatly  
**valeō, valēre, valuī, valitum:** to be strong, be healthy  
**vallis (valles), vallis f.:** valley  
**valvae, ārum f. pl.:** doors  
**variō, variāre, variāvī, variātum:** to change, alter, diversify  
**varius, a, um:** diverse, manifold  
**vastō, vastāre, vastāvī, vastātum:** to devastate, ravage, make empty  
**vastus, a, um:** empty, desolate, enormous  
**vātes, vātis m. or f.:** seer, prophet  
**vel:** (conj.) or  
**vēlātus, a, um:** wrapped, covered, concealed  
**vellus, velleris n.:** fleece, hide  
**vēlō, vēlāre, vēlāvī, vēlātum:** to cover, hide  
**vēlox, vēlōcis:** swift, quick  
**vēlum, ī n.:** sail, covering  
**vēna, ae f.:** blood vessel, vein  
**vēnātor, vēnātoris m.:** a hunter, sportsman  
**vēnātus, ūs m.:** the chase, hunting  
**venēficus, a, um:** magical, poisonous

- venenum, ī n.:** poison, venom  
**venerō, venerāre, venerāvī, venerātum:** to worship, entreat  
**veneror, venerārī, venerātus sum:** to ask, entreat with reverence, worship  
**venia, ae f.:** pardon  
**veniō, venīre, vēnī, ventum:** to come  
**venter, ventris m.:** belly  
**ventus, ī m.:** wind  
**Venus, Veneris f.:** Venus, the Roman goddess of love and sexuality  
**Vēr, Vēris n.:** Spring, divine representation of the springtime  
**verber, verberis n.:** lash, whip  
**verbum, ī n.:** word  
**veritus, a, um:** fearful, fearing  
**vernō, vernāre, vernāvī, vernātum:** to flourish, bloom  
**vērō: (adv.)** truly  
**verrō, verrere, verrī, versum:** to sweep  
**versus, a, um:** turned, turned over  
**vertex, verticis m.:** whirlpool, crown of head, summit  
**vertō, vertere, vertī, vertus:** to turn, turn around  
**Vertumnus, ī m.:** Vertumnus, god of the cycle of the seasons  
**veru, ūs n.:** a spit  
**vērūm, ī n.:** the truth  
**vērus, a, um:** true  
**Vesta, ae f.:** Vesta, goddess of the hearth  
**vester, vestra, vestrum:** (poss. adj.) your  
**vestigium, ī n.:** footprint, trace  
**vestigō, vestigāre, vestigāvī, vestigātum:** to track down, trace out  
**vestimentum, ī n.:** garment  
**vestis, vestis f.:** garment, clothing  
**vetō, vetāre, vetuī, vetitum:** to forbid, prohibit  
**vetus, veteris:** old, ancient  
**vetustus, a, um:** old  
**via, ae f.:** road, way, journey  
**viātor, viātoris m.:** a traveler  
**vibrō, vibrāre, vibrāvī, vibrātum:** to shake, quiver, vibrate  
**victima, ae f.:** a sacrificial victim  
**victor, victōris m.:** victor, winner  
**victōria, ae f.:** victory  
**victrix, victrīcis f.:** female victor  
**victus, a, um:** conquered  
**videō, vidēre, vīdī, vīsum:** to see  
**villus, ī m.:** shaggy hair  
**vīmen, vīminis n.:** branch, twig  
**vinculum, ī n.:** bond, binding, sandal strap  
**vincō, vincere, vīcī, victum:** to conquer  
**vinculum, ī n.:** chain, bond  
**vindicō, vindicāre, vindicāvī, vindicātum:** avenge  
**vīnum, ī n.:** wine  
**viola, ae f.:** a violet  
**violātus, a, um:** broken, injured  
**violō, violāre, violāvī, violātum:** to treat with violence, outrage, rape  
**vīpereus, a, um:** of a snake  
**vir, virī m.:** a man  
**vireō, virēre, viruī:** to be green  
**virga, ae f.:** branch, twig  
**virgineus, a, um:** maiden, virgin  
**virginitās, virginitātis f.:** virginity  
**Virgō, Virginis f.:** Virgo (zodiac sign), a virgin  
**viridis, e:** green  
**virilis, e:** manly, masculine  
**virtūs, virtūtis f.:** manliness, excellence, virtue  
**vīs, vis f.:** strength, power, force  
**viscera, viscerum n. pl.:** the flesh, inner organs, entrails  
**vīsītō, vīsītāre, vīsītāvī, vīsītātum:** to see, visit  
**vīsus, a, um:** seen, looked upon  
**vīsus, ūs f.:** a sight, appearance  
**vīta, ae f.:** life  
**vitiō, vitiāre, vitiāvī, vitiātum:** to injure, damage, rape  
**vītis, vītis f.:** vine  
**vītō, vītāre, vītāvī, vītātum:** to escape, avoid  
**vīvō, vīvere, vixī, victum:** to live  
**vīvus, a, um:** living

**vix:** (adv.) with difficulty, scarcely

**vōcālis, e:** uttering sounds, singing, vocal, sonorous

**vocō, vocāre, vocāvī, vocātum:** to call, summon

**volō, volāre, volāvī, volātum:** to fly, move quickly

**volūbilis, e:** turning, spinning, whirling

**volucris, volucris f.:** a bird, flying thing

**voluptās, voluptātis f.:** pleasure, enjoyment

**volvō, volvere, volvī, volūtum:** to roll, twist, turn round

**vōs, vestrī/vestrum pl.:** (second person pron.) vōbīs (dat./abl.), vōs (acc.), you all

**vōtum, ī n.:** prayer, wish

**vōx, vōcis f.:** voice

**Vulcānus, ī m.:** Vulcan, the god of craftsmen and fire

**vulgus, ī m.:** common people, crowd

**vulnerō, vulnerāre, vulnerāvī, vulnerātum:** to wound

**vulnus, vulneris n.:** a wound

**vultus, ūs m.:** face, expression, appearance

**Zephyrus, ī m.:** Zephyr, the west wind

**Zētēs, ae m.:** Zetes, a son of Boreas and Orithyia

**zōna, ae f.:** zone, region, girdle

# Index

ablative: absolute 106; accompaniment, agent, manner, means, respect/specification: *see* companion website

Actaeon 44–8, 50

adjectives: agreement with nouns, first–second declension, genitive in *iūs*: *see* companion website; reflexive 2; substantives *see* companion website; third declension 42, *see also* companion website

Aesculapius 162–6

Aeson 126–8

Andromeda 90–4

Apollo 22–4, 26–31, 38, 104, 162–4

Arachne 31, 101, 102–106, 108, 113, 149

Atlas 84–9

Augustus xiii–xiv, 4, 31, 119, 160, 168, 173

Bacchus/Dionysus 31, 48, 52–4, 56, 60–5, 92, 142  
Boreas 2–3, 6–7, 120–4

Cadmus 38–42, 44, 50–2, 60, 65, 78–82, 108

Ceres 96–8

Cipus 156–60

conditions 148–9

conjugations: first 4, 30, 36, 64, 70, 88–9, 112, 118, 136, 148, *see also* companion website; fourth 54, 64, 70, 88–9, 112, 118, 136, 148, *see also* companion website; second 14, 30, 36, 64, 70, 88–9, 112, 118, 136, 148, *see also* companion website; third 24, 30, 36, 64, 70, 88–9, 112, 118, 136, 148, *see also* companion website; third-io 24, 30, 36, 64, 70, 88–9, 112, 118, 136, 148, *see also* companion website

correlatives *see* companion website

creation 2–4, 6–8, 37

cum clauses 154

Daphne 26–31

dative: agent 108, 122; summary of uses *see* companion website

declensions: basic uses of cases *see* companion website; fifth 76, *see also* companion website;

first 4, *see also* companion website; fourth 48, *see also* companion website; second 8, *see also* companion website; third 20, *see also* companion website

demonstratives 58–9, *see also* companion website

deponent verbs 124, *see also* companion website

Deucalion 16–21

Diana 44–8, 109

fear clauses 118

genitive: objective *see* companion website; partitive 44, *see also* companion website  
gerundives 172, *see also* companion website  
gerunds 172, *see also* companion website

Hermaphroditus 72–6

Hersilia 150–4

imperative mood *see* companion website

indicative mood: future 36, 54, *see also* companion website; future perfect 70, *see also* companion website; imperfect 30, 54, *see also* companion website; perfect 64, *see also* companion website; pluperfect 70, *see also* companion website; present 4, 14, 24, 54, *see also* companion website

indirect question 166

indirect statement 94, *see also* companion website

infinitives 94, *see also* companion website

irregular verbs: *esse* 4, 30, 36, 64, 70, 112, 118, 136, 148; *ferre* *see* companion website; *ire* *see* companion website; *nōlle* *see* companion website; *posse* *see* companion website; *velle* *see* companion website

Julius Caesar xiv, 113, 154, 160, 168–73

Juno 50–52, 54, 56, 114

Jupiter/Jove 6, 10, 31, 34, 38, 50–4, 56, 84–6, 90, 98, 108, 150

jussive noun clauses 142

jussive subjunctive 112

- Lycaon 10–14  
 Mars 38, 60, 66–71, 119, 138, 150–4  
 Medea 124, 126–30, 132–7  
 Mercury 72  
 Minerva/Athena 40–2, 54, 82, 92, 101, 102–6, 149  
 Neptune 12, 31  
 Niobe 108–13  
 Nisus 138–40  
 Orithyia 120–4  
 participles 100–1, 124, *see also* companion website  
 passive periphrastic 108, 122, 168, *see also* companion website  
 passive verb forms 88–9, *see also* companion website  
 Pelias 130, 132–7  
 Pentheus 60–5  
 Perseus 84–9, 90–4  
 personal pronouns *see* companion website  
 Phaethon 32–7  
 Philomela 114–19, 120  
 Pluto 96–101  
 Pomona 144–9  
 Procne 114–19, 120  
 prohibitions *see* companion website  
 Proserpina 96–101, 102  
 purpose clauses 130  
 Pyrrha 16–21  
 Python 22–4  
 Quirinus 150–4  
 relative clauses 82, *see also* companion website  
 relative clauses of characteristic 160  
 relative pronoun 82, *see also* companion website  
 result clauses 136  
 Romulus 150–4, 160  
 Salmacis 72–6  
 Scylla 138–42  
 Semele 48, 50–4  
 subjunctive mood: imperfect 118, *see also* companion website; perfect 136, *see also* companion website; pluperfect 148, *see also* companion website; present 112, *see also* companion website  
 Tereus 114–9  
 Tiresias 56–9, 60, 108  
 Venus 66–71, 72, 113, 168–73  
 Vertumnus 144–9  
 Vulcan 8, 66–71



## Taylor & Francis eBooks

### Helping you to choose the right eBooks for your Library

Add Routledge titles to your library's digital collection today. Taylor and Francis eBooks contains over 50,000 titles in the Humanities, Social Sciences, Behavioural Sciences, Built Environment and Law.

**Choose from a range of subject packages or create your own!**

#### Benefits for you

- » Free MARC records
- » COUNTER-compliant usage statistics
- » Flexible purchase and pricing options
- » All titles DRM-free.

REQUEST YOUR  
**FREE**  
INSTITUTIONAL  
TRIAL TODAY

#### Free Trials Available

We offer free trials to qualifying academic, corporate and government customers.

#### Benefits for your user

- » Off-site, anytime access via Athens or referring URL
- » Print or copy pages or chapters
- » Full content search
- » Bookmark, highlight and annotate text
- » Access to thousands of pages of quality research at the click of a button.

### eCollections – Choose from over 30 subject eCollections, including:

Archaeology

Architecture

Asian Studies

Business & Management

Classical Studies

Construction

Creative & Media Arts

Criminology & Criminal Justice

Economics

Education

Energy

Engineering

English Language & Linguistics

Environment & Sustainability

Geography

Health Studies

History

Language Learning

Law

Literature

Media & Communication

Middle East Studies

Music

Philosophy

Planning

Politics

Psychology & Mental Health

Religion

Security

Social Work

Sociology

Sport

Theatre & Performance

Tourism, Hospitality & Events

For more information, pricing enquiries or to order a free trial, please contact your local sales team:  
[www.tandfebooks.com/page/sales](http://www.tandfebooks.com/page/sales)

 **Routledge**  
Taylor & Francis Group

The home of  
Routledge books

[www.tandfebooks.com](http://www.tandfebooks.com)